



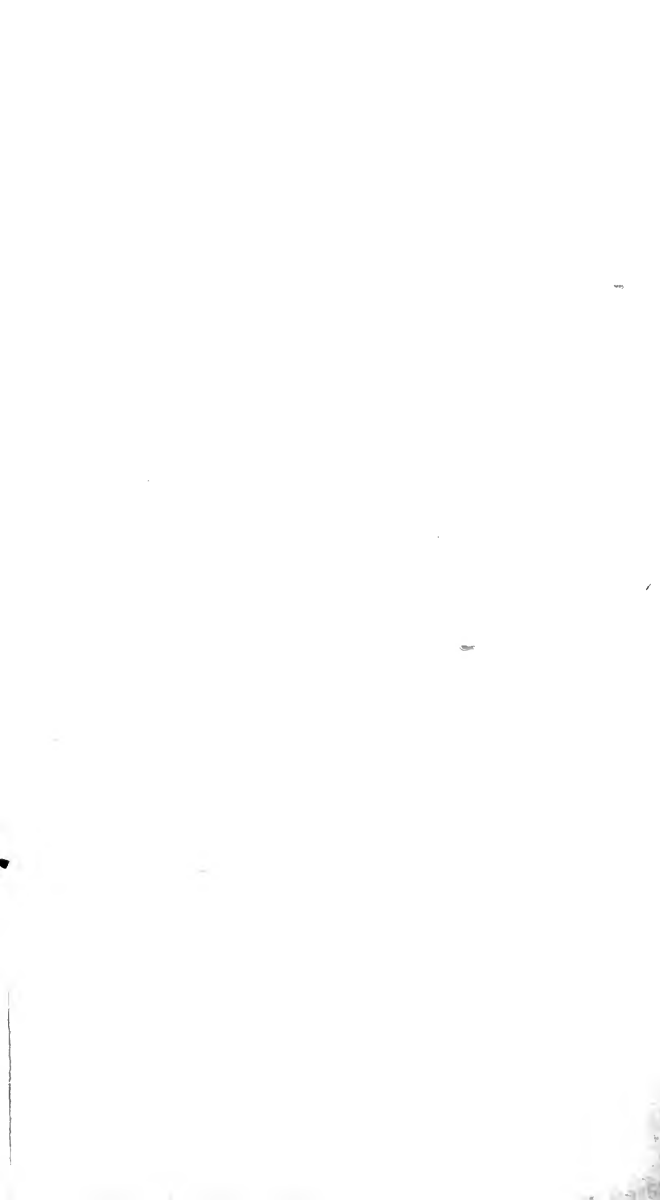
Kennell - Secretary

No A. 2178.2



Exchange from

C. F. Scribner & Co







L I F E E M

AND MOST SURPRISING

A D V E N T U R E S

OF

ROBINSON CRUSOE,

OF YORK, MARINER ;

W H O

Lived Eight and Twenty Years in an uninhabited Island,  
on the Coast of *America*, lying near the Mouth of  
the great river of *Oroonoque* : Having been cast  
on Shore by Shipwreck, wherein all the  
men were drowned but himself :

A S A L S O,

A RELATION how he was wonderfully deliv-  
ered by PIRATES.

---

*The whole Three Volumes faithfully abridged.*

---

PRINTED AT BOSTON,  
BY I. THOMAS AND E. T. ANDREWS,  
FAUST'S Statue No 45 Newbury Street.  
M.DCC.XCIV.

A2178.2

EXCHANGE FROM  
C. F. LIBBIE & Co.  
FEB. 15, 1918  
A

# P R E F A C E.

*I*T is very well known what universal reception the life of this man has met with in the world, and therefore needs little or no apology for this edition, which comprizes the three volumes into one faithful abridgment. In the perusal of which, you will find so many curious moral observations, so many divine reflections to comfort the afflicted mind, and such an heavenly prospect of the wonderful Providence of God, that scarce any who read it but what may make some application of it to themselves, and pleasingly be led to a knowledge of the divine blessings. But here I am sensible, that as there are some who complain against the design in general, as an inconsistent romance; so there are others who, I doubt not, will not fail depreciating the performance of this in particular; they may represent, that the abridging a work is scandalous and ridiculous; and that thereby is taken away from it the only ornaments that recommend it to wise men. If this be true, and they could persuade the world so, I know not what must become of those many curious abridgments that are extant among us, far more pleasant than the tiresome eloquence of larger volumes; nor how well the common sort of people will be pleased in being withheld, by an excessive price, from a history so instructive and entertaining: and do assure my readers, whatever they may allege against this abridgement, there are not only many errors corrected, but several palpable and gross contradictions rectified and amended: in a word, there is not one material circumstance omitted; neither is there any deprived of its most proper observations.

The first volume treats of his Shipwreck, the manner of his Deliverance upon the Desolate Island, and tells of all that anxiety of mind he endured, till the uncommon accident of his being released, after eight and twenty years solitude.

In the second he appears in his prosperous condition, till the death of his dear wife; when, resuming his former wandering inclinations; it necessarily leads us to his future adventures, and remarkable travels by land from the Eastern countries, which are as amusing and instructive as his voyage by sea.

*In the last place is shewn to us a prospect of the angelic world, the blessings of peace, retirement, and contentment, which is the end of life, the glory of happiness, and an introduction to the divine and blessed mansions above.*

*When this book first appeared in the world, how delightful, how ravishing did it seem to every reader? Here the passions of the mind were so beautifully expressed, both in the nature of his adversity and prosperity, that they melted every heart with a tender sympathy and compassion. Robinson Crusoe was in every body's mouth as much as in the mouth of Pretty Poll! But since to this abridgement there are added two parts more, with the natural consequence of life, it cannot, methinks, but give an entire satisfaction, as much as any thing of this kind can possibly do: and therefore, I cannot otherwise think but it will be well worth my reader's perusal; and, I hope, merit his approbation too.*

*Needless therefore it is to enlarge any farther on this performance, but leave it to the ingenuity and candour of unprejudiced persons: and whatever may be the fate of it, I do assure the public, that no pains or labour have been wanting to render this history delightful, instructive, and entertaining.*

T H E

---

T H E  
L I F E   A N D   A D V E N T U R E S  
O F  
R O B I N S O N   C R U S O E.

---

**I**N the year 1632, I was born at *York*, of a reputable family. My father was a native of *Bremen*, who, merchandizing at *Hull* for some time, gained a very plentiful fortune, and married my mother in *York*, who received her first breath in that country : And as her maiden name was *Robinson*, I was called *Robinson Kreutznaer* ; which not being easily pronounced in the English tongue, we are commonly known by the name of *Crusoe*.

I was the youngest of three brothers ; the eldest was a Lieutenant Colonel in *Lockhart's* regiment, but slain by the *Spaniards* : What became of the other I could never learn.

No charge nor pains were wanting in my education, my father designing me for the law ; yet nothing would serve me, but I must go to sea, both against the will of my father, the tears of my mother, and the entreaties of friends. One morning my father expostulated very warmly with me : Says he, what reason have you to leave your native country, where there must be a more certain prospect of content and happiness, than to enter into a wandering condition of uneasiness and uncertainty ? He recommended to me *Agar's* will, *neither to desire adversity, nor riches* ; that a middle state of life was the most happy ; and that the high towering thoughts of raising our condition by wandering abroad, were surrounded with misery and danger, and often ended with confusion and disappointment : I entreat you, nay I command you, said he, to desist from these intentions : Consider your eldest brother, who laid down his life for his honour, or rather lost it for his disobedience to my will. If you will go, added he, my prayers however shall be offered for your preservation ; but a time may come, when, desolate, oppressed, or forsaken, you may wish

you had taken your poor despised father's counsel. He pronounced these words with such a moving and paternal eloquence, while floods of tears ran down his aged cheeks, that seemed to stem the torrent of my resolutions.

But this wore off soon, and a little after I informed my mother, that I could not settle to any business, my resolutions were so strong to see the world ; and begged she would gain my father's consent, only to go one voyage, which if it did not prove prosperous I would never attempt a second : But my desire was as vain as my folly in asking : my mother passionately expressed her dislike of this proposal, telling me, *That as she saw I was bent upon my own destruction, contrary to their will and my duty, she would say no more, but leave me to myself, to do whatsoever I pleased.*

I was then I think, nineteen years old, when one time being at *Hull*, I met a school fellow of mine, going along with his father, who was master of a ship, to *London* : And acquainting him with my wandering desires, he assured me of my free passage, and a plentiful share of what was necessary. Thus, without imploring a blessing, or taking a farewell of my parents, I took shipping on the first of *September 1651*. When our ship having no sooner left the *Humber* altern, but there arose such a violent storm, and being extremely sea sick, I thought that the judgments of God deservedly followed me for my disobedience to my dear parents. It was then only I called to mind the good advice of my father ; how easy and comfortable was a middle state of life ; and if it pleased God to set me on dry land once more, I would return to my parents, implore their forgiveness, and bid a final adieu to my wandering inclinations.

Such were my thoughts while the storm continued ; but these good resolutions decreased with the danger. More especially, when my companion came to me, clapping me on the shoulder : *What, Bob ! said he, sure you was not frightened last night with scarce a cap full of wind ? — And do you, cry'd I, call such a violent storm a cap full of wind ? A storm, you fool you, said he, this is nothing ; a good ship and sea room always baffle such a foolish squall of wind as that : But you're a fresh water sailor : come, boy, turn out, see what fine weather we have now, and a good bowl of punch will drown all your past sorrows* In short the punch was made, I was drunk, and in one night's time drowned both my repentance and my good resolutions, entirely forgetting the vows and promises I made in my distress : And whenever any reflections would return on me, what by company and drinking, I soon mastered those fits, as I deridingly called them. But this only made way for  
another

another trial, whereby I could not but see how much I was beholden to kind providence.

Upon the sixth day, we came to an anchor in *Harwich* road, where we lay wind bound with some *Newcastle* ships; and there being good anchorage, and our cables sound, the seamen forgot their late toil and danger, and spent their time as merrily as if they had been on shore. But on the eighth day there arose such a brisk gale of wind, which prevented our tiding it up the river, and still increasing, our ship rid fore castle in, having shipped several large seas.

It was not long before horror seized the seamen themselves, when I heard the master express this melancholly ejaculation, *Lord have mercy upon us, we shall be all lost and undone!* For my part, sick unto death, I kept my cabin, till the universal and most dreadful apprehensions among us of our speedy fate, made me get up upon deck; and there I was dreadfully affrighted indeed: The sea went mountains high: I could see nothing but distress around us: Two ships had cut their masts on board, and another was foundered. Two more, had lost their anchors, were forced out to the mercy of the ocean; and to save our lives, we were forced to cut our fore mast and main mast quite away.

Who is there so ignorant as not to judge of my dreadful condition? I was but a fresh water sailor, and therefore it seemed more terrible. Our ship was very good, but too much laden, which made the sailors often cry out, *She will founder*; words I then was ignorant of! All this while the storm continuing, the master and the more sober part of his men went to prayers, expecting death every moment. In the middle of the night one cried out, *We had sprung a leak, another, That there was four feet water in the hold.* I was just ready to expire with fear, when immediately all hands were called to the pump; and the men forced me also in that extremity to share with them in their labour. While thus employed, the master espying some light colliers, fired a gun as a signal of distress; which I, not understanding what it meant, and thinking that either the ship broke, or some dreadful thing happened, fell into a swoon; but in that common condition of woe, no body minded me, excepting to thrust me aside with their feet, thinking me dead, and it was a great while before I recovered.

Happy it was for us, when upon the signal given, they ventured out their boats to save our lives. All our pumping had been in vain, and vain had their attempts been, had they not come to our ship's side, when our men cast them a rope over stern with a buoy to it, which after great labour they got hold of, and we hawling them to us, got into their boat. So leaving our ship, we perceived it sink in less than a quarter of an hour, by which I know what was *foundering at sea.* And

now

now the men incessantly laboured to recover their own ship, but the sea ran so high, and the wind blowing hard, they thought it convenient to hawl within shore; which with great difficulty and danger at last we happily effected, landing at a place called *Cromer*, not far from *Winterton* light house: From whence we all walked to *Yarmouth*, where, as objects of pity, many good people furnished us with necessaries for our subsistence either to *Hull* or *London*.

'Tis strange, that after all this, like the Prodigal son, I did not return to my father; who hearing of the ship's calamity, for a long time thought me entombed in the deep. No doubt but I should have *shared in his fatted calf*, as the scripture expresseth it: But my ill fate still pushed me on, in spite of the powerful conviction of reason and conscience.

When I had been at *Yarmouth* three days, I met my old companion, who had given me the invitation to go on board along with his father. His behaviour and speech was altered, and in a melancholy manner asked me how I did, telling his father who I was, and how I had made this voyage for a trial only to proceed farther abroad: Upon which the old gentleman turning to me, gravely said, *young man, you ought never to go to sea any more, but to take this for a certain sign that you will never prosper in a sea faring condition.* Sir, answered I, will you take the same resolution? 'Tis a different case, said he, 'tis my calling, and consequently my duty; but as you have made this voyage for a trial, you see what ill success heaven has set before your eyes; and perhaps our miseries have been on your account, like *Jonah in the ship of Tarshish*: But pray what are you, and on what account did you go to sea? Upon which I very freely declared my whole story; at the end of which he made this exclamation, Ye sacred powers! what had I committed, that such a wretch should enter into my ship to heap upon me such a deluge of miseries! But soon recollecting his passions, *Young man, said he, depend upon it, if you do not go back, wherever you go, you will meet with disasters and disappointments, till your father's words are fulfilled upon you.* And so we parted.

I thought at first to return home, but shame opposed that good motion, as thinking I should be laughed at by my neighbours and acquaintance. So strange is the nature of youth, who are not ashamed to sin, but yet ashamed to repent; and far from being ashamed of those actions for which they may be accounted fools, think it folly in returning to their duty, which is the principal mark of wisdom. In short, I travelled up to *London*, resolved upon a voyage; and a voyage I soon heard of, by my acquaintance with a Captain who took a fancy to me, to go to the coast of *Guinea*. Having some money, and appearing like a gentleman, I went on board, not as a common sailor or foremast man; nay, the commander agreed

I should



I should go that voyage with him without any expense ; that I should be his mess mate and companion ; and I was very welcome to carry any thing with me, and make the best merchandize I could.

I blessed my happy fortune, and humbly thanked my Captain for his offer ; when acquainting my friends in *Yorkshire*, forty pounds were sent me, the greatest part of which I believe my dear father and mother contributed to ; and with which I bought toys and trifles as the Captain directed me. My Captain also learned me navigation, how to keep an account of the ship's course, take an observation, and led me into the knowledge of several useful branches of the mathematics. And indeed this voyage made me both a sailor and merchant : For I brought home 5 pounds 9 ounces of gold dust for my adventure, which produced at my return to *London*, almost three hundred pounds. But in this voyage I was extremely sick, being thrown into a violent calenture, through excessive heat, trading upon the coast, from the latitude of 15 degrees north, even to the line itself.

But alas ! my dear friend the Captain soon departed this life, after his arrival. This was a sensible grief to me ; yet I resolved to go another voyage with his mate, who had now got command of the ship. But this proved unsuccessful : for though I did not carry quite £100 of my late acquired wealth, so that I had £200 left, which I deposited with the Captain's widow, who was an honest gentlewoman, yet my misfortunes in this voyage were very great upon me ; for our ship sailing towards the *Canary* islands, we were chased by a *Salée* rover ; and in spite of all the sail we could make, by crowding as much canvass as our yards would spread, or masts carry, the pirate gained upon us, and so we prepared ourselves to fight. They had 18 guns, and we had but 12. About three in the afternoon there was a desperate engagement, wherein many were killed and wounded on both sides ; but finding ourselves overpowered with numbers, our ship disabled, and ourselves too impotent to have the least hopes of success, we were forced to surrender, and accordingly were all carried into the port of *Salée*. Our men were sent to the Emperor's court to be sold there ; but the pirate Captain taking notice of me, kept me to be his own slave.

In this condition I thought myself the most miserable creature on earth, and the prophesy of my father came afresh into my thoughts. As it happened, my condition was better than I thought it to be, as will soon appear. Some hopes indeed I had, that my new patron would go to sea again, where he might be taken by a *Spanish* or *Portuguese* man of war, and then I should be set at liberty. But in this I was mistaken, for he never took me with him, but left me to look after his little garden,

garden, and do the drudgery of his house; and when he returned from sea, would make me lie in the cabin, and look after the ship. I had no one that I could communicate my thoughts to, which were continually meditating my escape; no *Englishman*, *Irishman*, or *Scotchman* here, but myself; and for two years I could see nothing practicable, but only please myself with the imagination.

After some length of time, my patron, as I found, grew so poor, that he could not fit out his ship as usual: And then he used constantly, once or twice a week, if the weather was fair, to go out a fishing, taking me and a young *Morefco* boy to row the boat; and so much pleased was he with me for my dexterity in catching the fish, that he would often send me with a *Moor*, who was one of his kinsmen, and the *Morefco* youth, to catch a dish of fish for him.

One morning, as we were at the sport, there arose such a thick fog, that we lost sight of the shore; and rowing we knew not which way, we laboured all the night, and in the morning found ourselves in the ocean, two leagues from land; however, we attained there at length, and we made the greater haste, because our stomachs were exceedingly sharp and hungry. But the better to prevent such disasters, my patron ordered a carpenter to build a little stateroom or cabin in the middle of the long boat, with a place behind it to steer and haul home the main sheet, with other conveniences, to keep him from the weather, as also lockers to put in all manner of provisions; with a handsome shoulder of mutton sail, gibing over the cabin.

In this he frequently took us a fishing; and one time inviting two or three persons of distinction to go with him, made provision extraordinary, providing also three fuzees, with powder and shot, that they might have some sport at fowling along the sea coast. The next morning, the boat being clean, her ancients and pendants out, and every thing ready, their minds altering, my patron ordered us to go a fishing, for that his guests would certainly sup with him that night.

And now I began to think of my deliverance indeed: In order to this, I persuaded the *Moor* to get some provisions on board, as not daring to meddle with our patron's; who, taking my advice, we stored ourselves with rusk biscuit, and three jars of water; besides I privately conveyed into the boat a bottle of brandy, some twine, thread, a hammer, hatchet, and a saw; in particular some beefwax, which was a great comfort to me, and served to make candles. I then persuaded *Moley* (for so was the *Moor* called) to procure some powder and shot, pretending to kill sea curlews, to which he innocently and readily agreed. And in short, being provided with all things

things necessary, we sailed out, resolving for my own part to make my escape, though it might cost me my life.

When we had passed the castle, we fell to fishing; but though I knew there was a bite, I dissembled the matter, in order to put farther out to sea. Accordingly we ran a league farther; when giving the boy the helm, and pretending to stoop for something, I seized Muley by surprise, and threw him overboard. He was an excellent swimmer, soon arose, and made towards the boat; upon which I took out a fuzee, and presented it at him: *Muley, said I, I never yet designed to do you any harm, and seek nothing now but my redemption. I know you are able enough to swim to shore and save your life; but if you are resolved to follow me, to the endangering of mine, the very moment you proceed I will shoot you through the head.* The harmless creature, at these words, turned himself from me, and I make no doubt got safe to land. Then turning to the boy Xury, I perceived he trembled at the action; but I put him out of all fear, telling him, that if he would be true and faithful to me, I would do well by him: *And therefore, said I, you must stroke your face to be faithful, and, as the Turks have learnt you, swear by Mahomet, and the beard of your father, or else I will throw you into the sea also.* So innocent did the child then look, and with such an obliging smile, consented, that I readily believed him, and, from that day forward, began to love him entirely.

Thus we pursued our voyage, and that they should think me gone to the *Strait's* mouth, I kept to the southward to the truly *Barbarian* coast; but in the dusk of the evening, I changed my course, and steered directly S. by E. that I might keep near the shore; and having a fresh gale of wind, with a pleasant smooth sea, by three o'clock the next day I was 150 miles beyond the Emperor of *Morocco's* dominions. Yet still having the dreadful apprehensions of being retaken, I continued sailing for five days successively, till such time as the wind shifting to the southward, made me conclude, that if any vessel was in chase of me they would proceed no farther: And after so much fatigue and thought, I anchored in the mouth of a little river, I knew not what, or where; neither did I then see any people. What I principally wanted was fresh water; and I was resolved, about dusk, to swim ashore. But no sooner did the gloomy clouds of night begin to succeed the declining day, than we heard such barking, roaring, and howling of wild creatures, that one might have thought the very strangest monsters of nature, or infernal spirits, had their residence there. Poor Xury, almost dead with fear, entreated me not to go on shore that night. *Supposing I don't Xury, said I, and in the morning we should see men, who are worse than those we fear; what then? O den we may give*

give dem de shoot gun, replied Xury, laughing, and de gun make dem all run away. The wit, and broken *English*, which the boy had learnt from the captives of our nation, pleased me entirely, and to add to his cheerfulness, I gave him a dram of the bottle: We could get but little sleep all the night for the terrible howlings they made; and indeed we were both affrighted very much, when, by the rowling of the water, and other tokens, we justly concluded one of those monsters made towards our boat; I could not see it till it came within two oars length, when, taking my fuzee, I let fly at him: Whether I hit him or no, I cannot tell; but he made towards the shore, and the noise of my gun encreased the stupendous noise of the monsters.

The next morning, I was resolved to go on shore to get fresh water, and venture my life among beasts or savages, should either attack me. Xury said he would take one of the jars and bring me some. I asked him why he would go, and not I. The poor boy answered, *if wild mans come, they eat me, you go away*. A mind scarcely now to be imitated, so contrary to self preservation, the most powerful law of nature! This indeed encreased my affection to the child. Well, dear Xury, said I, *we will both go ashore, both eat wild mans, and they shall eat neither of us*. So giving Xury a piece of rusk bread to eat, and a dram, we waded ashore, carrying nothing with us but our arms, and two jars for water. I did not go out of sight of the boat, as dreading the savages coming down the river in their canoes. But the boy seeing a low descent, or vale, about a mile in the country, he wandered to it; and then running back to me with great precipitation, I thought he was pursued by some savage or wild beast, upon which I approached, resolving to perish or protect him from danger. As he came nearer to me, I saw something hanging over his shoulders, which was a creature he had shot, like a hare, but different in colour, and longer legs; however, we were glad of it, for it proved wholesome nourishing meat; but what added to our joy was, my boy assured me there was plenty of water, and that he *see no wild mans*. And greater still was our comfort, when we found fresh water in the creek, where we were, when the tide was out, without going so far up into the country.

In this place I began to consider that the *Canary* and the *Cape de Verd* islands lay not far off; but having no instrument, I knew not what latitude, or when to stand off to sea for them; yet my hopes were, I should meet some of the *English* trading vessels, who would relieve and take us up.

The place I was in was, no doubt, that wild sort of country, inhabited only by a few, that lies between the Emperor of *Morocco's* dominions and the *Negroes*: It was filled with wild  
beasts,

beasts, and the *Moors* use it for hunting chiefly. From this place I thought I saw the top of the mountain *Teneriffe*, in the *Canaries*; which made me try twice to attain it, but as often was I drove back, and so forced to pursue my fortune along the shore.

Early one morning we came to an anchor under a little point of land, but pretty high, and the tide beginning to flow, we lay ready to go farther in: But *Xury*, whose youthful and penetrating eyes were sharper than mine, in a soft tone, desired me to keep far from land, lest we should be devoured: *For, look yonder, Meyer*, said he, *and see de dreadful monster fast asleep on the side of the hill*. Accordingly, looking where he pointed, I espied a fearful monster indeed; it was a terrible great lion that lay on shore, covered, as it were, by the shade of a piece of the hill. *Xury*, said I, *you shall go on shore and kill him*. But the boy looked amazed: *Me kill him*, says he, *he eat me at one mouth*; meaning one mouthful. Upon which I bid him he still, and charging my biggest gun with two slugs, and a good charge of powder, I took the best aim I could to shoot him through the head, but his leg lying over his nose, the slug broke his knee bone. The lion, awaking with the pain, got up, but soon fell down, giving the most hideous groan I ever heard: But taking my second piece, I shot him through the head, and then he lay struggling for life. Upon this *Xury* took heart, and desired my leave to go on shore. *Go then*, said I. Upon which taking a little gun in one hand, he swam to shore with the other, and coming close to the lion, put a period to his life, by shooting him again through the head.

But this was spending our ammunition in vain, the flesh not being good to eat. *Xury* was like a champion, and comes on board for a hatchet to cut off the head of his enemy; which not having strength to perform, cut off a foot. But I bethought myself that his skin would be of great use, which cost *Xury* and I a whole day's work; when spreading it on the top of our cabin, the hot beams of the sun so effectually dried it, in two days time, that it afterwards served me for a bed to lie upon.

And now we sailed southwardly, living sparingly on our provisions, and went no oftener on shore than we were obliged for fresh water. My design was to make the river *Gambia* or *Senegal*, or any where about the *Cape de Verd*, in hopes to meet some *European* ship. If Providence did not so favour, my next courte was to seek for the islands, or lose my life among the *Negroes*. And, in a word, I put my whole strefs upon this, *either that I must meet with some ship, or certainly perish*.

But, as we were sailing along, we saw people stand on the shore to look at us; we could also perceive they were black

and stark naked. I was inclined to go on shore; but *Xury* cried, *No, no*; however, I approached nearer, and I found they ran along the shore by me a good way: They had no weapons in their hands; except one, who held a long stick, which *Xury* told me was a lance, with which they could kill at a great distance. I talked to them by signs, and made them sensible I wanted something to eat: They beckoned to me to stop my boat, while two of them run up into the country and in less than half an hour came back and brought with them two pieces of dry flesh, and some corn, which we kindly accepted; and to prevent any fears of either side, they brought the food to the shore, laid it down, then went and stood a great way off, till we fetched it on board, and then came close to us again.

But while we were returning thanks to them, being all we could offer, two mighty creatures came from the mountains, one as it were pursuing the other with great fury, which we were inclined to believe, because they seldom appear but in the night; and both these passing swiftly by the *Negroes*, jumped into the sea, wantonly swimming about, as though the diversion of the waters had put a stop to their fierceness. At last, one of them coming nearer my boat than I expected or desired, I shot him directly through the head; upon which he sunk immediately, yet rising again, would have willingly made to the shore; but between the wound and the strangling of the water, he died before he could reach it.

It is not possible for me to express the consternation the poor *Negroes* were in at the firing my gun; much less can I mention their surprize, when they perceived the creature to be slain by it. I made signs to them to draw near it, and then gave them a rope to hale it on shore. It was a beautiful leopard, which made me desire its skin; and the *Negroes* seeming to covet the carcase, I very freely gave it to them. As for the other leopard, it made to shore, and ran with a prodigious swiftness out of sight. The *Negroes* having kindly furnished me with water, and with what roots and grain their country afforded, I took my leave, and after eleven days sail, I came in sight of the *Cape de Verd*, and those islands called by its name. But the great distance I was from it, and fearing contrary winds would prevent my reaching either of them, I grew melancholy and dejected; when, on a sudden, *Xury* cried out, *Master, Master, a ship with a sail*; and looked so frightened, as if it was his master's ship sent in search of us: But I soon discovered she was a *Portuguese* ship, and, as I thought, bound to the coast of *Guinea*, for *Negroes*. Upon which I strove for life to get up to them; but vain had it been, if, through their perspective glasses, they had not perceived me, and shortened their sail to let me come up. Encouraged

at this, I let up my patron's ancient, and fired a gun, both as signals of distress; upon which they very kindly lay to; so that in three hours time I got up with them. They spoke to me in *Portuguese*, *Spanish*, and *French*, but neither of these did I understand; till at length a *Scotch* sailor called, and then I told him I was an *Englishman*, who had escaped from the *Moors* of *Salle*; upon which they took me kindly on board, with all my effects.

Surely none can express that inconceivable joy my heart felt at this my happy deliverance; who, from being a miserable and forlorn creature, was not only relieved, but in favour with the master of the ship, whom in return for my deliverance I offered all I had to him; *God forbid*, said he, *that I should take anything from you; every thing shall be delivered to you when you come to Brasil: If I have saved your life, it is no more than I should expect to receive myself from any other, when in the same circumstances I should happen to meet the like deliverance; and should I take from you what you have, and leave you at Brasil, why this would only be taking away a life I have given; my charity teaches me better; those effects you have, will support you there, and provide you a passage home again.* And indeed he acted with the strictest justice in what he did, taking my things in his possession, and giving me an exact inventory, even to my earthen jars. He bought my boat of me for the ship's use, giving me a note of eighty pieces of eight, payable at *Brasil*, and if any body offered more he would make it up. He also gave me sixty pieces for my boy *Xary*. It was with great reluctance I was prevailed upon to sell the child's liberty, who had served me so faithfully; but the boy himself was willing, and it was agreed, that after ten years, he should be made free, upon his renouncing *Mahometanism* and embracing Christianity.

Having a pleasant voyage to the *Brasils*, we arrived in the *Bay de Todos los Santos*, or *All Saints Bay*, in about 22 days after. And here I cannot forget the generous treatment of the Captain; he would take nothing for my passage, gave me 20 ducats for the leopard's skin, and 30 for the lion's: Every thing he caused to be delivered; and what I would sell he bought. In short, I made about 220 pieces of my cargo, and with this stock I entered once more, as I may say, into the *scene of life*.

Being recommended to an honest planter, I lived with him till such time as I was informed of the manner of their planting and making sugar; and seeing how well they lived, and how suddenly they grew rich, I was filled with an emulation, at least, to settle among them, resolving to get my money committed to me, and to purchase me a plantation.

To be brief, I bought a settlement next door to an honest and kind neighbour, born at *Lisbon*, of *English* parents, whose plantation joining to mine, we improved it very amicably together: Both our stocks were low, and for two years we planted only for food: But the third year we planted some tobacco, preparing each a large piece of ground for planting canes the ensuing year; but now wanting assistance, I repented the loss of my dear boy *Xury*.

Here having none to assist me, my father's words came again into my mind; and if only a middle station of life I sought, why could it not as well be obtained in *England* as here? When I pondered of this with regret, the thoughts of my late deliverance forsook me; I had none to converse with but my neighbour; no work to be done but by my own hands; and this often made me say, my condition was like that of a man cast upon a desolate island. So unhappy are we in our reflections, so forgetful what good things we receive ourselves, and so unthankful for our deliverance from those calamities that others endure.

I was in some measure settled before the Captain who took me up departed from the *Brazils*. One day I went to him, and told him what stock I had in *London*, desiring his assistance in obtaining its remittance. To which the good gentleman readily consented, but would only have me send for half my money, lest it should miscarry, which, if it did, the remainder might support me: And so taking letters of procuration from me, bid me trouble myself no farther about it.

And indeed wonderful was his kindness towards me; for he not only procured the money I had drawn for upon my Captain's widow, but sent me over a servant, with a cargo proportionable to my condition. He also sent me over tools of all sorts, iron work, and utensils necessary for my plantation, and which proved of the greatest use to me in my business.

Wealth now accumulating on me, and uncommon success crowning my prosperous labours, I might have rested happy in that middle state of life my father had so often recommended; yet nothing would content me, such was my evil genius; but I must leave this happy station, for a foolish ambition in rising greater than the nature of the thing admitted; and thus, once more, I cast myself into the deepest gulf of misery that ever abandoned creature fell into. For having lived four years in *Brazil*, I not only learnt the language, but contracted acquaintance with the most eminent planters, and even the merchants of *St. Salvadore*; to whom, by way of discourse, giving an account of my two voyages to the coast of *Guinea*, and the manner of trading there for mere trifles, by which we might furnish our plantations with *Negroes*, they gave such attention



attention to what I said, that three of them came one morning to me, and told me they had a secret proposal to make. After enjoining me to secrecy (it being an infringement on the powers of the Kings of *Portugal* and *Spain*) they told me they had a mind to fit out a ship to go to *Guinea*, in order to stock the plantation with *Negroes*, which, as they could not be publicly sold, they would divide among them; and if I would go their supercargo in the ship, to manage the trading part, I should have an equal share of the *Negroes*, without providing any stock. The thing indeed was fair enough, had I been in another condition; but I, born to be my own destroyer, could not resist the proposal; but accepted the offer, upon condition of their looking after my plantation: So, making a formal will, I bequeathed my effects to my good friend the Captain, as my universal heir; but obliged him to dispose of my effects as directed, one half of my produce to himself, and the other to be shipped for *England*.

The ship being fitted out, and all things ready, we set sail the first of *September*, 1659, being the same day eight years I left my father and mother in *Yorkshire*. We sailed northward upon the coast, in order to gain *Africa*, till we made *Cape Augustina*, from whence going further in the ocean, out of sight of land, we steered as though we were bound for the isle of *Fernand de Noremba*, leaving the islands on the east; and then it was we met with a cruel tempest, which held us for twelve days successively; so that the waters carried us wheresoever they pleased. In this perplexity one of our men died, and one man and the boy were washed overboard. When the weather cleared up a little, we found ourselves eleven degrees north latitude upon the coast of *Guinea*. Upon this the Captain gave reasons for returning, which I opposed, counselling him to stand away for *Barbadoes*, which, as I supposed, might be attained in 15 days. So altering our course, we sailed north west and by west, in order to reach the *Leeward* islands; but a second storm succeeding, drove us to the westward, so that we were justly afraid of falling into the hands of cruel *Savages*, or the paws of devouring beasts of prey.

In this great distress, one of our men, early in the morning, cried out, *Land! Land!* when no sooner looking out, but our ship struck upon a sand, and in a moment the sea broke over in such a manner, that we expected we should all have perished immediately. We knew nothing where we were, or upon what land we were driven; whether an island or the main; inhabited or not inhabited; and we could not so much as hope that the ship would hold many minutes, without breaking in pieces, except, the wind, by a miracle, should turn about immediately. While we stood looking at one another, expecting death every moment, the mate laid hold of the boat,

and, with the help of the rest, got her flung over the ship's side, and getting all into her, being eleven of us, committed ourselves to God's mercy, and the wild sea. And now we saw that this last effort would not be a sufficient protection from death; so high did the sea run, that it was impossible the boat should live. As to making sail, we had none; neither if we had, could we make use of any. So that when we had rowed, or rather were driven about a league and a half, a raging wave, like a lofty mountain, came rolling a stern of us, and took us with such fury, that at once it overfet the boat. Thus being swallowed up in a moment, we had hardly time to call upon the tremendous name of God; much less to implore, in dying ejaculations, his infinite mercy, to receive our departing souls.

Men are generally counted insensible, when struggling in the pangs of death; but while I was overwhelmed with water, I had the most dreadful apprehensions imaginable; for the joys of heaven, and torments of hell, seemed to present themselves before me in these dying agonies, and even in the small space of time, as it were, between life and death. I was going, I thought, I knew not whither, in a dismal gulf unknown, and as yet unperceived, never to behold my friends, nor the light of this world any more! Could I even have thought annihilation, or a total dissolution of soul as well as body, the gloomy thoughts of having no further being, no knowledge of what we hoped for, but an eternal quietus, without life or sense; even that, I say, would have been enough to strike me with horror and confusion! But striving to the last extremity, while I thought all my companions were overpowered and entombed in the deep, it was with great difficulty I kept my breath till the wave spent itself, and retiring back, left me on the shore half dead with the water I had taken in. However, I got on my feet as fast as I could, lest another wave should pursue, and carry me back again; but for all the haste I made, I could not avoid it; for the sea came after me like a high mountain, or furious enemy, so that my business was to hold my breath, and by raising myself on the water, preserve it by swimming; the next dreadful wave buried me at once twenty or thirty feet deep, but at the same time carried me with a mighty force and swiftness towards the shore; when raising myself, I held out as well as possible, till at length the water having spent itself, began to return, at which I struck forward, and feeling ground with my feet, I took to my heels again; thus being served twice more, I was at last dashed against a piece of a rock, in such a manner as left me senseless; but recovering a little before the return of the waves, which, no doubt, then would have overwhelmed me, I held fast by the rock till those succeeding waves abated; and then, fetching  
another

another run, was overtook by a small wave, which was soon conquered; but before any more could overtake me, I reached the main land, where clambering up the cliffs of the shore, tired and almost spent, I sat down on the grass, free from the dangers of the foaming ocean.

No tongue can express the ecstasies and transports that my soul felt at this happy deliverance; it was like a reprieve to a dying malefactor, with the halter about his neck, and ready to be turned off. I was wrapt up in contemplation, and often lifted up my hands, with the profoundest humility, to the Divine Power, for saving my life, when the rest of my companions were all drowned. And now I began to cast my eyes around, to behold what place I was in, and what I had next to do. I could see no house, nor people: I was wet, yet had no clothes to shift me; hungry and thirsty, yet nothing to eat or drink; no weapon to destroy any creature for any sustenance, nor defend myself against devouring beasts: In short, I had nothing but a knife, a tobacco pipe, and a box half filled with tobacco. The darksome night coming upon me, increased my fears of being devoured by wild creatures; my mind was plunged in despair; and, having no prospect, as I thought, of life before me, prepared for another kind of death than what I had lately escaped. I walked about a furlong, to see if I could find any fresh water, which I did to my great joy, and taking a quid of tobacco to prevent hunger, I got up into a thick bushy tree, and seating myself so that I could not fall, a deep sleep overtook me, and for that night buried my sorrows in a quiet repose.

It was broad day the next morning before I awaked; when not only I perceived the tempest was ceased, but the ship was driven almost as far as the rock before mentioned, where the waves had dashed me against, and which was about a mile from the place where I was. When I came down from my apartment in the tree, I perceived the ship's boat two miles distant on my right hand, lying on shore, as the waves had cast her. I thought to have got to her, but there being an inlet of water of about half a mile's breadth between it and me, I returned again towards the ship, as hoping to find something for my more immediate subsistence. About noon, when the sea was calm, that I could come within a quarter of a mile of her, it was to my grief I perceived that, if we had kept on board, all our lives had been saved. These thoughts, and my solitude, drew tears from my eyes, though all in vain. So resolving to get to the ship, I stript, and leapt into the water; when swimming round her, I was afraid I should not get any thing to lay hold of; but it was my good fortune to espy a small piece of rope hang down by the fore chains, so low, that with great difficulty, by the help of it, I got into the forecastle  
of

of the ship. Here I found that the ship was bulged, and had a great deal of water in her hold; her stern was lifted up against a bank, and her head almost in the water. All her quarter, and what was there, were free and dry. The provisions I found in good order, with which I crammed my pockets; and, losing no time, ate when I was doing other things; I also found some rum, of which I took a hearty dram; and now I wanted for nothing except a boat which indeed was all, to carry away what was needful for me.

Necessity occasions quickness of thought. We had several spare yards, a spare topmast or two, and two or three large spars of wood: With these I fell to work, and flung as many of them overboard as I could manage, tying every one of them with a rope that they might not drive away. This done, I went down the ship's side, and tied four of them fast together at both ends, in form of a raft, and laying two or three short pieces of plank upon them crossways, I found it would bear me, but not any considerable weight. Upon which I went to work again, cutting a spare topmast into three lengths, adding them to my raft with a great deal of labour and pains. I then considered what I should load it with, it being not able to bear a ponderous burden. And this I soon thought of, first laying upon it all the planks and boards I could get; next I lowered down three of the seamens' chests, after I had filled them with bread, rice, three *Dutch* cheeses, five pieces of dried goats' flesh, and some *European* corn, what little the rats had spared; but for the liquors, I found several cases of bottles belonging to our skipper. In which were some cordial waters, and four or five gallons of arrack, which I stowed by themselves. By this time the tide beginning to flow, I perceived my coat, waistcoat, and shirt swim away, which I had left on the shore; as for my linen, breeches, and stockings, I swam with them on to the ship: But I soon found clothes enough, yet took no more than I wanted for the present. My eyes were chiefly on tools to work with; and after long search I found out the carpenter's chest, which I got safe down on my raft: Then I looked for arms and ammunition, and, in the great cabin, found two good fowling pieces, two pistols, several powder horns filled, a small bag of shot, and two rusty old swords. I also found three barrels of powder, two of which were good, but the third had taken water; with two or three broken oars, two saws, an axe, and a hammer, I put to sea; and in getting to shore, I had three encouragements; 1. A smooth calm sea. 2. The tide rising and setting in to the shore. 3. The little wind there was blew towards land. But after I had sailed about a mile, I found the raft to drive a little distance from the place where I first landed; and then I perceived a little opening of the land, with a strong

strong current of the tide running into it, upon which I kept in the middle of the stream: But great was my concern, when on a sudden the fore part of my raft ran aground; so that had I, not with great difficulty, for near half an hour, kept my back straining against the chests, to keep my effects in their places, all I had would have gone into the sea. But after some time, the rising of the water caused the raft to float again, when coming up a little river, with land on both sides, I landed in a little cove, as near the mouth as possible, the better to discover a sail, if any such providentially passed by that way.

Not far off, I spied a hill of a stupendous height, surrounded with lesser hills about it: And thither I was resolved to go and view the country, that I might see what part was the best place to fix my habitation in: Accordingly, arming myself with a pistol, a fowling piece, powder, and ball, I ascended the mountain: There I perceived I was in an island encompassed by the sea; no distant lands to be seen, but scattered rocks that lay to the west; that it seemed a barren place, and, as I thought, inhabited only by wild beasts. I perceived abundance of fowls, but was ignorant of what kind, or whether good for nourishment; I shot one of them at my return, which occasioned a confused screaming among the other birds; and I found it, by its colour and beak, to be a kind of hawk, but its flesh was perfect carrion.

When I came to my raft, I brought my effects on shore, which work spent that day entirely; and fearing that some cruel beasts might devour me in the night while I slept, I made a kind of a hut or barricade with the chests and boards I brought from shore. That night I slept very comfortably, and the next morning my thoughts were employed to make a further attempt on the ship, and bring away what necessaries I could find, before another storm should break her to pieces. Accordingly, I got on board as before, and prepared a second raft, far more nice than the first; upon which I brought away the carpenter's stores, two or three bags full of nails, a great jack screw, a dozen or two of hatchets, and a grindstone. I also took away several things that belonged to the gunner, particularly two or three iron crows, two barrels of musket bullets, another fowling piece, a small quantity of powder, and a large bag full of small shot. Besides these, I took all the mens' clothes I could find, a spare fore top sail, hammock, and some bedding; and thus completing my second cargo, I made all the haste to shore I could, fearing some wild beast might destroy what I had there already. But I only found a little wild cat sitting on one of the chests, who not seeming to fear me, or the gun that I presented to her, I threw her a piece of biscuit, which she instantly ate, and departed.

When

When I had gotten these effects on shore, I went to work, in order to make me a little tent with the sail and some poles which I had cut for that purpose; and having finished it, what things might be damaged by the weather I brought in, piling all the empty chests and casks in a circle, the better to fortify it against any sudden attempt of man or beast. After this I blocked up the doors with some boards, and an empty chest turned the long way without. I then charged my gun and pistol; and laying my bed on the ground, slept as comfortably, till next morning, as though I had been in a Christian country.

Now, though I had enough to subsist me a long time, yet, despairing of a sudden deliverance, or that both ammunition and provision might be spent before such a thing happened, I coveted as much as I could: And so long as the ship remained in that condition, I daily brought away one necessary or other; particularly the rigging, sails, and cordage; some twine, a barrel of wet powder, some sugar, a barrel of meal, three casks of rum; and what indeed was most welcome to me, a whole hoghead of bread.

The next time I went, I cut the cables in pieces, carried off a hauser whole, with a great deal of iron work, and made another raft with the mizen and sprit sail yards; but this being so unweildly, by the too heavy burden I laid upon it, and not being able dextrously to guide it as the former, both my cargo and I were overturned. For my part, all the damage I sustained was a wet skin; and at low water, after much labour in diving, I got most of the cables, and some pieces of iron.

Thirteen days had I now been in the island, and eleven times on board, bringing away all that was possible; though, I believe, had the weather been calm, I should have brought away the whole ship, piece by piece. As I was going the twelfth time, the wind began to rise; however, I ventured at low water, and rummaging the cabin effectually, in a locker I found several razors, scissars, and some dozens of knives and forks; and in another, thirty six pounds in pieces of eight, silver, and gold. *Ab! simple vanity,* said I, *whom this world so much doats on, where is now thy virtue, thy excellence to me? You cannot procure me one thing needful, nor remove me from this desolate island to a place of plenty: One of these knives, so meanly esteemed, is to me more preferable than all this heap: Even therefore remain where thou art, to sink in the deep, as unregarded, even as a creature whose life is not worth preserving.* Yet after all this exclamation, I wrapt it up in a piece of canvas, and began to think of making another raft; but soon I perceived the wind began to rise, a fresh gale blowing from the shore, and the sky overcast with clouds and darkness. So thinking a rat to be in vain, I let myself into the water with what things  
I had

I had about me, and it was with much difficulty I got ashore, when soon after it blew a fearful storm.

That night I slept very contentedly in my little tent, surrounded with all my effects; but when I looked out in the morning, no more ship was to be seen. This much surprised me for the present, yet when I considered I had lost no time, abated no pains, and had got every thing useful out of her, I comforted myself in the best manner, and entirely submitted to the will of Providence.

My next thoughts were, how I should defend and secure myself from savages and wild beasts, if any such were in the island. At one time I thought of digging a cave; at another, I was for erecting a tent; and, in short, I resolved to do both: The manner or form of which will not, I hope, be unpleasing to describe.

When I considered the ground where I was; that it was moorish, and had no fresh water near it; my resolutions were to search for a soil healthy and well watered, where I might not only be sheltered from the sun's scorching heat, but be more conveniently situated, as well to be secured from wild men and beasts of prey, as more easily to discover any distant sail should it so happen.

And indeed it was not long before I had my desire; I found a little plain near a rising hill, the front towards which being as steep as a house side, nothing could descend on me from the top. On the side of this rock was a little hollow place resembling the entrance or door of a cave. Just before this place, on the circle of the green, I resolved my tent should stand. This plan did not much exceed 100 yards broad, and about twice as long, like a delightful green before my door, with a pleasing, though irregular descent every way to the low grounds by the sea side, lying on the N. N. W. side of the hill, so that it was sheltered from the excessive heat of the sun. After this I drew a semicircle, containing ten yards in its semidiameter, and twenty yards in the whole, driving down two rows of strong stakes, not six inches from each other. Then, with the pieces of cable which I had cut on board, I regularly laid them in the circle between the piles up to their tops, which were more than five feet out of the earth, and after drove another row of piles looking within side against them, between two or three feet high, which made me conclude it a little impregnable castle, from men and beasts: And, for my better security, I would have no door, but entered in and came out by the help of a ladder, which I also made.

Here was my fence and fortress, into which I carried all my riches, ammunition and stores. After which, working on the rock, what with the dirt and stones I dug out, I not only raised

raised my ground two feet, but made a little cellar to my mansion house; and this cost me many days labour and pains. But one day in particular a shower of rain falling, thunder and lightning ensued, which put me in terror, lest my powder should take fire, and not only hinder my necessary subsistence by killing me food, but even blow up me and my habitation: To prevent which, I fell to making boxes and bags, in order to separate it, having by me near 150lb. weight. And thus being established as king of the island, every day I went out with my gun to see what I could kill that was fit to eat. I soon perceived numbers of goats, but very shy: Yet having watched narrowly, and seeing I could better shoot off the rocks, than when in the low grounds, I one day happened to shoot a she goat suckling a young kid; who not thinking its dam slain, stood by her unconcerned: and when I took the dead creature up, the young one followed me even to the inclosure. I lifted the kid over the pales, and would willingly have kept it alive; but finding it could not be brought to eat, I was forced to slay it also for my own subsistence.

Thus entered into a strange scene of life, as ever any man was in, I had most melancholy apprehensions concerning my deplorable condition; and many times the tears would plentifully run down my face, when I considered how I was debarred from all communication with human kind. And while some desponding cogitations would seem to make me accuse providence, other good thoughts would interpose and reprove, after this manner: Well, supposing you are desolate, is it not better to be so, than totally perish? Why were you singled out to be saved, and the rest destroyed? Why should you complain, when not only your life is preserved, but the ship driven even into your reach, in order to take what was necessary out of her for your subsistence? But to proceed: It was, by the account I kept, the 30th of *September*, when I first landed on this island: About twelve days after, fearing I should lose my reckoning of time, nay even forget the *Sabbath-days*, for want of pen, ink, and paper; I carved it with a knife upon a large post, in great letters, and setting it up where I landed, viz. *I came on shore Sept. 30, 1659.* Every day I cut a notch with my knife on the sides of this square post, and that on *Sabbath* was as long again as the rest; and every first day of the month as long again as that long one: In this manner I kept my kalendar, weekly, monthly, or yearly reckoning of time. But had I made a more strict search (as I did afterwards) I need not have set up this mark: For among the parcels belonging to the gunner, carpenter, and Captain's mate, those very things I wanted I found, particularly pens, ink, and paper; also two or three compasses, some mathemati-  
cal



cal instruments, dials, perspectives, books of navigation, three *English* bibles, and several other good books, which I carefully put up. But here I cannot but call to mind our having a dog and two cats on board, whom I made inhabitants with me in my castle. But though one might think I had all such necessaries as were desirable, yet still I found several things wanting. My ink was daily wasting; I wanting needles, pins, and thread, to mend or keep my clothes together; particularly a spade, pick axe, or shovel, to remove the earth: It was a year before I finished my little bulwark; and having some intervals of relaxation, after my daily wandering abroad for provision, I drew up this plan alternately, as creditor and debtor, to remind me of the miseries and blessings of my life, under so many various circumstances.

## E V I L.

*I am cast upon a desolate island, having no hopes, no prospect of a welcome deliverance.*

*Thus miserably am I singled out from the enjoyment or company of all mankind.*

*Like an hermit (rather should I say, a lonely anchorite) am I forced from human conversation.*

*My clothes, after some time, will be worn out; and then I shall have none to cover me.*

*When my ammunition is wasted, then shall I remain without any defence against wild men and beasts.*

*I have no creature, no soul to speak to; none to beg assistance from. Some comfort would it be to resound my woes, where I am understood; and beg assistance, where I might hope for relief.*

## G O O D.

*But yet I am preserved, while my companions have perished in the raging ocean.*

*Yet set apart to be spared from death! and he who has so preserved me can deliver me from this condition.*

*However I have food to eat, and even a happy prospect of subsistence whilst life endures.*

*At present I enjoy what is absolutely needful; and the climate is so hot, that, had I ever so many, I should hardly wear them.*

*Yet if it does, I see no danger of any to hurt me, as in Africa; And what if I had been cast away on that coast?*

*Is there not God to converse to, and is not he able to relieve thee? Already has he afforded thee sustenance, and put it in thy power to provide for thyself till he send thee a deliverance.*

And now easing my mind a little by these reflections, I began to render my life as easy as possible. I must here add, to the description I have given of my habitation, that having raised a turf wall against the outside of it, I thatched it so close, as might keep it from the inclemency of the weather. I also improved it within, enlarged my cave, and made a passage

sage and door in the rock, which came out beyond the pale of my fortification. I next proceeded to make a chair and table, and so began to study those mechanical arts that seemed to me practicable: For when I wanted a plank or board, I hewed down a tree with my hatchet, making it as thin with my axe as possible, and then smooth enough with my adze to answer my designs; yet this way could I make no more than one board out of a tree: But in length of time I got boards enough to shelter all my stores, every thing being regularly placed, and my guns securely hanging against the side of the rock. All this made it a very pleasant sight to me, being the result of vast labour and diligence; which leaving for a while, and me to the enjoyment of, I shall give the reader an account of my Journal, from the day of my landing, till the fixing and settling of my habitation, as heretofore shewn.

## J O U R N A L.

*September 30, 1659.* I unhappy *Robinson Crusoe*, having suffered shipwreck, was driven on this desolate island, which I named the *Desolate Island of Despair*, the rest being swallowed up in the tempestuous ocean. The next day I spent in consideration of my unhappy circumstances, having no prospect, but of death, either to be starved with hunger, or devoured by beasts or merciless savages.

*Octob. 1.* That morning, with great comfort, I beheld the ship drove ashore. Some hopes I had, that when the storm was abated, I might be able to get some food and necessaries out of her; which I conceived were not damaged, because the ship did stand upright. At this time I lamented the loss of my companions, and our misfortune in leaving the vessel. When I perceived the ship, as it were, lie dry, I waded through the sands, then swam aboard, the weather being very rainy, and with scarcely any wind.

To the 24th of this month, my time was employed in making voyages, every tide getting what I could out of the ship. The weather very wet and uncertain.

*Octob. 20.* My raft, and all the goods thereon, were over-set; yet I recovered most of them again at low water.

*Octob. 25.* It blew hard, and rained night and day, when the ship dissolved in pieces, so that nothing was seen of her but the wreck at low water. This day I secured my goods from the inclemency of the weather.

*Octob. 26.* I wandered to see where I could find a place convenient for my abode. I fixed upon a rock, in the evening, marked out a half moon, intending to erect a wall, fortified with piles, lined within with pieces of cables, and covered with turf.

*Nov.*

*Nov.* 1. I erected my tent under a rock; and took up my lodging very contentedly in a hammock that night.

*Nov.* 2. This day I fenced myself in with timber, chests, and boards.

*Nov.* 3. I shot two wild fowl, resembling ducks, which were good to eat; and in the afternoon made me a table.

*Nov.* 4. I began to live regularly: In the morning, I allowed myself two or three hours to walk out with my gun; then worked till near 11 o'clock: And after refreshed myself with what I had to eat. From 12 to 2 I would lie down to sleep. Extreme sultry weather: In the evening go to work again.

*Nov.* 5. Went out with my gun and dog, shot a wild cat with a soft skin, but her flesh was good for nothing. The skins of those I killed I preserved. In my return I perceived many wild birds, and was terrified by some seals, which made off to sea.

*Nov.* 6. Completed my table.

*Nov.* 7. Fair weather. I worked till the 12th, but omitted the 11th, which, according to my calculation, I supposed to be *Sunday*.

*Nov.* 13. Rain in abundance, which however much cooled the earth, when thunder and lightning caused in me a terrible surprize. The weather clearing, in separate parcels I secured my powder.

*Nov.* 14 to 16. I made little boxes for my powder, lodging them in several places. I also shot a large fowl, which proved excellent meat.

*Nov.* 17. I began to dig in the rock, yet was obliged to desist for want of a pick axe, shovel, and wheelbarrow. Iron crows I caused to supply the place of the first, but with all my art could not make a wheelbarrow.

*Nov.* 18. It was my fortune to find a tree, resembling what the *Brazilians* call an iron tree. I had like to have spoiled my axe with cutting it, being very hard, and exceeding heavy; yet with much labour and industry I made a sort of a spade out of it.

*Nov.* 23. These tools being made, I daily carried on my business; eighteen days I allowed for enlarging my cave, that it might serve me not only for a warehoute, but kitchen, parlour, and cellar. I commonly lay in the tent, unless the weather was rainy that I could not lie dry. So wet would it be at certain seasons, that I was obliged to cover all within the pale with long poles in the form of rafters leaning against the rock, and load them with flags and large leaves of trees resembling a thatch.

*Dec.* 10. No sooner did I think my habitation finished, but suddenly a great deal of the top broke in, so that it was a mercy

cy I was not buried in the ruins. This occasioned a great deal of pains and trouble to me, before I could make it firm and durable.

*Dec. 17.* I nailed up some shelves, and drove nails and staples in the wall and posts, to hang things out of the way.

*Dec. 20.* Every thing I got into its place, then made a sort of a dresser, and another table.

*Dec. 24, 25.* Rain in abundance.

*Dec. 26.* Very fair weather.

*Dec. 27.* I chanced to light on some goats, shot one, wounded another. I led it home in a string, bound up its leg, and cured it in a little time; at length it became so tame and familiar, as to feed before the door, and follow me where I pleased. This put me in mind to bring up tame creatures, in order to supply me with food after my ammunition was spent.

*Dec. 28, 29, 30.* The weather being excessive hot, with little air, obliged me for the most part to keep within doors.

*Jan. 1.* Still sultry. However, obliged by necessity, I went out with my gun, and found a great store of goats in the valleys; they were exceedingly shy, nor could my dog hunt them down.

*Jan. 3, to 14.* My employment this time was to finish the wall before described, and search the island. I discovered a kind of pigeons like our house pigeons, in a nest among the rocks: I brought them home, nursed them till they could fly, and then they left me. After this I shot some, which proved excellent food. Some time I spent vainly in contriving to make a cask; I may well say it was vain, because I could neither join the staves, or fix the heads, so as to make it tight. Then taking some goat's tallow I had by me, and a little *oakum* for the wick, I provided myself with a lamp, which served me instead of candles.

But now a very strange event happened: For being in the height of my search, what should come into my hand, but a bag, which was used to hold corn (as I supposed) for the fowls: So immediately resolving to put gunpowder in it, I shook all the husks and dirt upon one side of the rock, little suspecting what the consequence would be. The rain had fallen plentifully a few days before; and about a month after, to my great amazement, something began to sprout out very green and flourishing: And when I came to view it more nicely every day, as it grew, I found about 10 or 12 ears of green barley appearing in the very same shape and make as that in *England*.

I can scarce express the agitations of my mind at this sight. Hitherto I had looked upon the actions of this life no otherwise than only as the events of blind chance and fortune: But now, the appearance of this barley, to that sort of grain, flourishing

flourishing in a barren soil, and my ignorance in not conceiving how it should come there, made me conclude, *that miracles were not yet ceased*: Nay, I even thought that God had appointed it to grow there without any seed, purely for my sustenance in this miserable and desolate island. And indeed such great effect had this upon me, that it often made me melt into tears, through a grateful sense of God's mercies; and the greater still was my thankfulness, when I perceived, about this little field of barley, some rice stalks, wonderfully flourishing in proportion to the crop within.

While I was thus wonderfully pleased in mind, I concluded there must be more corn in the island; and therefore made a diligent search narrowly among the rocks, but could not find any; when, upon a sudden, it came into my mind, how I had shaken the husks of corn out of the bag, and then my admiration ceased, with my gratitude to the Divine Being, *as thinking it was but natural*, and not to be conceived a miracle; though even the manner of its preservation might have made me own it as a wonderful event of God's kind Providence.

It was about the latter end of *June* when the ears of this corn ripened, which I laid up very carefully, together with 20 or 30 stalks of rice, expecting one day I should reap the fruit of my labour; yet four years were expired before I could allow myself to eat any barley bread, and much longer time before I had any rice. After this, with indefatigable pains and industry for three or four months, at last I finished my cave on the 14th of *April*, having no way to go into it, but by a ladder against the wall.

*April 16.* I finished my ladder, and ascended it; after pulled it up, then let it down on the other side, and descended into my new habitation, where I had space enough, and so fortified that nothing could attack me without scaling the walls.

But what do all human pains and industry avail, if the blessings of God do not crown our labours? Or, who can stand before the Almighty, when he stretcheth forth his arm: For one time, as I was at the entrance of my cave, there happened such a dreadful earthquake, that not only the roof of the cave came crumbing about my ears, but the posts seemed to crack terribly at the same time. This made me, in great amazement, run to my ladder, and get over the wall: When there, I plainly knew it was an earthquake; the place I stood on sustaining three terrible shocks in less than three minutes. And when I saw the top of a great rock roll into the sea, then I expected the island would be swallowed up every moment: And dreadful it was to see the sea thrown into the most violent agitation and disorder by this tremendous accident.

For my part, I stood like a criminal, at the place of execution, ready to expire. At the moving of the earth, I was, as

it were, sea sick ; and very much afraid lest the rock, under which was my fence and habitation, should overwhelm me and it in a lasting tomb.

When the third dreadful shock had spent itself, my spirits began to revive ; yet still I would not venture to ascend the ladder, but continued sitting, not knowing what I should do. So little grace then I had, only to say, *Lord have mercy upon me !* and no sooner was the earthquake over, but that pathetic prayer left me.

It was not long after when a horrible tempest arose, at the same time attended with a hurricane of wind. The sea seemed mountains high, and the waves rolled so impetuously, that nothing could be perceived but froth and foam. Three hours did this storm continue, and in so violent a manner, as to tear the very trees up by the roots, which was succeeded by abundance of rain. When this was over, I went to my tent, but the rain coming again upon me in a furious manner, obliged me to take shelter in the cave ; and then I was forced to cut a channel through my fortification to let the water out. It continued raining all that night, and some time the next day : Yet, no sooner did the weather clear up, but I resolved to build me a little hut in some open place, walled round, to defend me from wild creatures and savages, as not thinking but at the next earthquake the mountain would fall upon my habitation and me, and swallow up all in its bowels.

*April 19, 20.* These days I spent in contriving how and in what manner I should fix my place of abode : All this while I was under the most dreadful apprehensions. When I looked round my habitation, every thing I found was in its proper place. I had several resolutions whether I should move or not. At length I resolved to stay where I was, till I had found a convenient place where I might pitch my tent.

*Apr. 22.* When I began to put my resolutions in practice, I was stopt for want of tools and instruments to work with. Most of my axes and hatchets were useless, occasioned by cutting the hard timber that grew on the island. It took me up a full week to make my grindstone of use to me, and at last I found out a way to turn it about with my foot, by the help of a wheel and a string.

*Apr. 28, 29.* These days were spent in grinding my tools.

*Apr. 30.* My bread falling short, I allowed myself but one biscuit a day.

*May 1.* As I walked along the sea shore, I found a barrel of gunpowder, and several pieces of the wreck, which the sea had flung up. Having secured these, I made to the ship, whose stern was torn off, and washed a great distance ashore ; but the rest lay in the sands. This, I supposed, was occasioned by the earthquake. Now I resolved to keep my old place

of abode ; and also to go to the ship that day, but found it impossible.

May 3. I went on board, and with my saw sawed off one of the beams which kept her quarter deck ; then I cleared the sand till flood.

May 4. I caught some fish, but they were not wholesome. The same day I also caught a young dolphin.

May 5. This day I also repaired to the wreck, and sawed another piece of timber : and when the flood came, I made a float of three great planks, which was driven ashore by the tide.

May 6, 7, 8, 9. These days I brought off the iron bolts, opened the deck with the iron crow, and carried two planks to land, having made a way into the very middle of the wreck.

May 10, 11, 12, 13, 14. All this time I spent in bringing off great quantities of iron and timber.

May 15. Took with me two hatchets, on purpose to cut some lead off the roll, but all in vain, for it lay too low under water.

May 26. I omitted going to the wreck this day ; for employing myself in looking for pigeons, I outstayed my time.

May 17. I perceived several pieces of the wreck blown ashore, which I found belonged to the head of the ship.

May 24. To this day I worked on the wreck, and with great difficulty loosened some things so much with the crow, that at the first flowing tide several casks floated out, and many of the seamens' chests ; yet that day nothing came to land, but pieces of timber, and a hoghead which had some *Brazil* pork in it. I continued working to the 15th of *June* (except necessary times for food and rest) and had I known how to have built a boat, I had timber and planks enough : I had also near one hundred weight of sheet lead.

June 16. As I was wandering towards the seaside, I found a large tortoise or turtle, being the first I had seen on the island ; though, as I afterwards found, there were many on the other side of it.

June 17. This day I spent in cooking it, found in her three score eggs, and her flesh the most savoury and pleasant I ever tasted in my life.

June 18. I staid within this day, there being a continual rain ; and it was something more chilly and cold than usual.

June 19. Exceeding bad, taken with a trembling and shivering.

June 20. Awake all night, my head rack'd with pain, and feverish.

*June*

June 21. Sick unto death, and terrified with the dismal apprehensions of my condition : Prayed to God frequently, but very confusedly.

June 22. Something better, but still uneasy in my mind.

June 23. Again relapsed, much as before.

June 24. Mended a second time.

June 25. A violent ague for seven hours, cold and hot fits succeeded, with faint sweats.

June 27. Better, but very weak ; yet I scrambled out, shot a she goat, brought it home, and broiled some of it : I would willingly have stewed it, and made some broth, but had no pot.

June 27. All this day I was afflicted with an ague ; thirsty, yet could not help myself to water : Prayed to God in these words : *Lord, in pity look upon me, Lord have mercy upon me, have mercy upon me !* After this I fell asleep, which I found had much refreshed me when I awaked. I fell asleep a second time, and fell into this strange and terrible sort of dream.

Methought I was sitting on the same spot of ground, at the outside of the wall, where I sat when the storm blew after the earthquake ; and that I saw a man descending from a great black cloud, and alight upon the ground. He was all over as bright as a flash of fire, that a little before surrounded him ; his countenance inconceivably terrible ; the earth, as as it were, trembled when he stepped upon the ground, and flashes of fire seemed to fill all the air. No sooner I thought him landed upon the earth, but with a long spear or other weapon he made towards me ; but first ascending a rising ground, his voice added to my amazement, when I thought I heard him pronounce these dreadful words, *Unhappy wretch ! seeing all these things have not brought thee to repentance, thou shalt immediately die.* In pronouncing this dreadful sentence, I thought he went to kill me with the spear that was in his hand.

Any body may think it impossible for me to express the horrors of my mind at this vision ; and even when I awaked, this very dream made a deep impression upon my mind. The little divine knowledge I had, I received from my father's instructions, and that was worn out by an uninterrupted series of seafaring impiety, for eight years space, except what sickness forced from me ; I don't remember I had one thought of lifting up my heart towards God ; but rather had a certain stupidity of soul, not having the least sense of fear of the omnipotent Being when in distress, nor of gratitude to him for his deliverances. Nay, when I was on the desperate expedition on the desert *African* shore, I can't remember I had one thought of what would become of me, and beg his consolation  
and



and assistance in my sufferings and distress. When the *Portuguese* captain took me up, and honourably used me; nay, farther, when I was even delivered from drowning, by escaping to this island, I never looked upon it as a judgment, but only said I was an unfortunate dog, and that's all. Indeed some secret transports of soul I had, which was not through grace, but only a common flight of joy, that I was yet alive, when my companions were all drowned: and no other joy could I conceive but what is common with the sailors over a bowl of punch, after they have escaped the greatest dangers.

The likelihood of wanting for neither food nor conveniences might have called upon me for a thankful acknowledgment to Providence. Indeed the growth of my corn touched me with some sense, but that soon wore off again; The terrible earthquake pointed to me as it were the finger of God, but my dreadful amazement continued no longer than its duration. But now, when my spirits began to sink under the burden of a strong distemper, and I could leisurely view the miseries of death present itself before my eyes, then my awakened conscience began to reproach me with my past life, in which I had so wickedly provoked the justice of God to pour down his vengeance upon me.

Such reflexions as these oppressed me even in the violence of my distemper. Some prayers I uttered, which only proceeded from my fear of death. But when I considered my father's advice and prophecy, I could not forbear weeping: For he told me, *That if I did persist in my folly I should not only be deprived of God's blessing, but have time enough to reflect upon my despising his instructions; and this in a wretched time, when none could help me.* And now concluding it to be fulfilled, having no soul in the island to administer any comfort to me, I prayed, however, earnestly, to the Lord, that he would help me in this my great calamity: And this, I think, was the first time I prayed in sincerity for many years. But now I must return to my Journal.

June 28. Something refreshed with sleep, and the fit quite off, I got up. My dream still occasioned in me a great consternation; and fearing that the ague might return the succeeding day, I concluded it a time to get something to comfort me. I filled a case bottle with water, and set it within the reach of my bed; and to make it more nourishing, and less chilly, I put some rum into it. The next I did was to broil me a piece of goat's flesh, of which I ate but little. I was very weak, however walked about, dreading the return of my distemper; and at night I supped on three of the turtle's eggs which I roasted and ate, begging God's blessing therewith.

After

After I had eaten, I attempted to walk again out of doors with my gun ; but so weak, that I sat down and looked at the sea, which was smooth and calm : While I continued here, these thoughts came into my mind.

In what manner is the production of the earth and sea, which I have seen so much of ? From whence came myself, and all other creatures living, and of what are we made ?

Our beings were assuredly created by some Almighty invisible Power, who framed the earth, the sea, and air, and all therein. But what is that Power ?

Certainly, it must follow, that God has created it all. Yet, said I, if God has made all this, he must be the ruler of them all, and what is relating thereto ; for certainly the power that makes, must indisputably have a power to guide and direct them. And if this be so (as certainly it must) nothing can happen without his knowledge or appointment. Then surely, if nothing happens without God's appointment, certainly God has appointed these my sufferings to befall me. And here I fixed my firm belief, that it was his will that it should be so ; and then proceeded to enquire, why should God deal with me in this manner ? Or what had I done thus to deserve his indignation ?

Here conscience shew in my face, reprehending me as a blasphemer ; crying with a loud and piercing voice, *Unworthy wretch ! dare you ask what you have done ? Look upon your past life, and see what you have left undone.* Ask thyself, why thou wert not long ago in the merciless hands of death ? Why not drowned in *Yarmouth* roads, or killed in the fight when the ship was taken by the *Sallee* man of war ? Why not entombed in the bowels of wild beasts on the *African* coast, or drowned here, when all thy companions suffered shipwreck.

Struck dumb with these reflections, I rose up in a pensive manner, being so thoughtful that I could not go to sleep : And fearing the dreadful return of my distemper, it caused me to remember that the *Brazilians* use tobacco for almost all diseases. I then went to my chest, in order to find some, where heaven no doubt directed me to a cure for both soul and body ; for there I found one of the bibles which till this time I had neither desire nor inclination to look into : I took both the tobacco and that out of the chest, and laid them on the table. Several experiments did I try with the tobacco : First I took a leaf, and chewed it ; but it being very green and strong, almost stupified me. Next I steeped it in some rum an hour or two, resolving when I went to bed to take a dose of it ; and in the third place, I burnt some over a pan of fire, holding my nose over it so long as I could endure the least heat without suffocation

In the intervals of this operation, though my head was giddy and disturbed with the tobacco, I took up the bible to read : No sooner did I open it, but there appeared to me these words, *Call on me in the day of trouble, and I will deliver, and thou shalt glorify me.*

At first this sentence made a very deep impression on my heart ; but soon wore off again, when I considered the word *deliver* was foreign to me. And as the children of *Israel* said, when they were promised flesh to eat, *Can God spread a table in the wilderness?* In like manner I began to say, Can God himself deliver me from this desolate island ? However, the words would still return to my mind, and after made a great impression upon me. As it now was very late, and the tobacco had dozed my head, I was inclined to sleep ; but before I would lie down, I fell on my knees, and implored the promise that God had made to me in the Holy Scriptures, that *if I called upon him in the day of trouble, he would deliver me.* With much difficulty I after drank the rum, wherein I had steeped the tobacco ; which flying in my head very violently, threw me into such a profound sleep, that it was three o'clock the next day before I awaked ; or rather, I believe, I slept two days, having certainly lost a day in my own account, and I could never tell any other way. When I got up, my spirits were lively and cheerful ; my stomach much better, being very hungry ; and, in short, no fit returned the next day, which was the 29th, but much altered for the better.

The 30th, I went abroad with my gun, but not far, and killed a sea fowl or two, resembling a brand goose, which yet I cared not to eat when I brought them home, but dined on two more of the turtle's eggs. In the evening I renewed my medicine, except not taking that quantity, neither did I chew of the leaf, or hold my head over the smoke, yet the next day I had a little spice of the cold fit, which was on the 1st of *July*.

*July 2.* I took my medicines as I did the first time.

*July 3.* The fit quite left me, but very weak. In this condition I often thought of these words, *I will deliver thee* ; and while at some times I would think of the impossibility of it, other thoughts would reprehend me, for disregarding the deliverances I had received, even in the most tormented and distressed condition. What regard had I to God's abundant mercies ? Had I done my part ? *He had delivered me, but I had not glorified him* ; as much as to say, I had not own'd and been thankful for that as a deliverance, and how could I expect a greater ? So much did this sensibly touch my heart, that I gave God thanks for my recovery from sickness in the most humble prostration.

*July*

*July 4.* This morning I began seriously to ponder on what is written in the *New-Testament*, resolving to read a chapter every morning and night, as long as my thoughts would engage me : But when soon after I set about this work seriously, I found my heart deeply affected with the impiety of my past life : These words that I thought were spoken to me in my dream revived, *All these things have not brought thee to repentance.* After this, I begged of God to assist me with his holy spirit in returning to my duty, when perusing the scriptures one day, I came to these words, *He has exalted a Prince and a Saviour, to give repentance and to give remission :* Immediately I laid down the book, and with uplifted hands to heaven, loudly cried, *O blessed Jesus, thou Son of David, Jesus, thou exalted Prince and Saviour, give me repentance !* And now indeed I prayed with a true sense of my condition, and a more certain hope founded on the word of God : Now I had a different sense of these words, *Call on me and I will deliver you ;* that is, from the dreadful load of guilt, which oppressed my sinful soul ; and not from a solitary life, which might rather be called a blessing (seeing I wanted neither food nor raiment) than living among the race of human kind, surrounded with so much oppression, misery and affliction : And, in a word, I came to this conclusion : That a deliverance from sin, was a much greater blessing than a deliverance from affliction. But again I proceed to my journal.

To the 24th of *July* I walked about with my gun, a little and a little at a time, having been reduced to the greatest extremity of weakness. The application and experiment I used were perfectly new ; neither could I recommend it to any one's practice. For though it carried off the fit, it very much weakened me ; and I had frequently convulsions in my nerves and limbs for some time. From hence I learned, that going abroad in rainy weather, especially when it was attended with storms and hurricanes of wind, was most pernicious to health. In this island I had been about ten months, never all the while having seen any human kind, and so accounted myself as sole monarch ; and, as I grew better, having secured my habitation to my mind, I resolved to make a tour round my kingdom, in order to make new discoveries.

The 15th of *July* I began my journey. I first went to the creek, where I had brought my rafts on shore ; and travelling farther, found the tide going no higher than two miles up, where there was a little brook of running water, on the banks of which were many pleasant savannas or meadows, plain, smooth, and covered with grass : On the rising parts, where I supposed the water did not reach, I perceived a great deal of tobacco growing to a very strong stalk : Several other plants I likewise found, the virtues of which I did not understand. But  
a long

a long time I searched for the cassava root, which I knew the *Indians* in that climate made their bread of, but all in vain. There were several plants of aloes, though at that time I knew not what they were: Likewise I saw several sugar canes, but imperfect for want of cultivation. With these few discoveries I came back that night, and slept contentedly in my little castle.

The next day, being the 16th, going the same way, and farther than the day before, I found the country more adorned with woods and trees. Here I perceived different fruits, which lay in very great abundance. The melons in plenty lay on the ground; and clusters of grapes, ripe and very rich, spread over the trees. You may imagine I was glad of this discovery, yet ate very sparingly, lest I should throw myself into a flux or fever. As for the grapes, I found them of excellent use; for when I had dried them in the sun, which preserved them as dried raisins are kept, they proved very wholesome and nourishing, and served me in those seasons when no grapes were to be had.

The night drawing on apace, I ascended up a tree, and slept very comfortably, though it was the first time I had lain out of my habitation. And when the morning came, I proceeded with great pleasure on my way travelling about four miles, as I imagined by the length of the valley, directing my course northward, there being a ridge of hills on south and north side of me. At the end of this valley I came to an opening, where the country seemed to descend to the west: There I found a little spring of fresh water proceeding out of the side of a hill, with its chrystal streams running directly east. And indeed here my senses were charmed with the most lovely object nature could afford; for the country appeared so flourishing, green and delightful, that to me it seemed like a planted garden. I then descended on the side of that delicious vale, where I found abundance of cocoa, orange, lemon and citron trees, but very wild and barren at that time: The juice of which I afterwards used to mix in water, which made it very cool and refreshing. And now, I was resolved to carry home and lay up a store of grapes, limes, and lemons, against the approaching wet season: So laying up in separate parcels, and then taking a few of each with me, I returned to my little castle, after having spent three days in this journey: But before I got home, the grapes were so bruised that they were utterly spoiled, the limes indeed were good, but few could I bring away.

July 19. Having prepared two bags, I returned thither again; but to my great surprize found all the grapes spread about, trod to pieces, and abundance eaten, which made me to conclude there were wild creatures thereabouts. To

remedy this, I gathered a large quantity of the grapes, and hung them upon the out branches of the trees, that they might cure and dry in the sun; and having well loaded myself with limes and lemons, I returned once more to my old place of residence.

And now it was, that contemplating on the fruitfulness of the valley, the pleasantness of the situation, the security from storms on that side the water, and the delightfulness of an adjacent wood; I concluded I was settled in the worst part of the country, therefore was thinking to remove my habitation. But when I considered again, that though it was pleasant it was not by the sea side, where there was a possibility, some time or other, a ship might either be driven to, or sail by that coast: and that to enclose myself among hills and woods must certainly frustrate all hopes of a deliverance; I resolved to let my castle remain where Providence had first assigned it. Yet, so ravished was I with this place, that I made me a little kind of bower, surrounding it at a distance with a double hedge, as high as I could reach, well staked and filled with bulrushes, and having spent a great part of the month of *July*, I think it was the first of *August* before I began to enjoy my labour.

*Aug. 3.* Perceiving my grapes to be dry, I took them from the trees, and they proved excellent good raisins of the sun; the most of which I carried to my cave; and happy for me I did so, by which I saved the best part of my winter food.

*Aug. 14.* It began to rain this day; and though I had made me a tent like the other, yet having no shelter of a hill to keep me from storms, nor a cave behind me to retreat to, I was obliged to retreat to my old castle. Still the rain continued more or less every day till the middle of *October*; and sometimes so violently, that I could not stir out of my cave for several days. This season I found my family to increase; for one of my cats that ran away from me, and whom I thought had been dead, returned about *August*, with three kittens at her heels, like herself, which I thought strange, because both my cats were females, and the wild cats of the island seemed to be of a different kind from our *European* cats; but from these cats proceeded such numbers, that I was forced to kill and destroy them as I would do wild beasts or vermin.

To the 26th of this month I could not stir out, it raining incessantly; when beginning to want food, I was compelled to venture twice, the first of which I shot a goat, and after found a very large tortoise. The manner of regulating my food was thus: A bunch of raisins served me for breakfast; a piece of goat's flesh or turtle broiled for my dinner; and two or three turtle's eggs for my supper. While the rain lasted, I daily worked two or three hours at enlarging my cave,  
and

and by degrees worked it on towards one side till I came to the out side of the hill, and made a door or way out, which came beyond my fence or wall, and so I came in and out this way. But after I had done this, I was troubled to see myself thus exposed, though I could not perceive any thing to fear, a goat being the biggest creature I had seen upon this island.

*Sept.* 30. Casting up my notches on my post, which amounting to 365, I concluded this to be the anniversary of my landing; and therefore humbly prostrating myself on the ground, confessing my sins, acknowledging God's righteous judgments upon me, and praying to *Jesus Christ* to have mercy on me, I fasted for twelve hours, till the going down of the sun; and then eating a biscuit and a bunch of grapes, laid me on the bed, and with great comfort took my night's repose. Till this time having no sense of religion, I never distinguished the *Sabbath-day*; but now I made a longer notch than ordinary for the *days of rest*, and divided the weeks as well as I could, though I found I had lost a day or two in my account. Soon after, my ink failing, I omitted a daily memorandum of indifferent things, and contented myself to write down only the most remarkable events of my life. The rainy and dry seasons appeared now regular to me, and experience taught me how to provide for them; yet, in one thing I am going to relate, my experience very much failed me. You may call to mind what I have mentioned of some barley and rice which I had saved; about thirty stalks of the former, and twenty of the latter; and at that time the sun being in its southern position going from me, together with the rains, made me conclude it a very proper season to sow it. Accordingly, I dug up a piece of ground with my wooden spade, and dividing it in two parts, sowed about two thirds of my seed, preserving by me about a handful of each. And happy it was I did so, for no rain falling, it was choaked up, and never appeared above the earth till the wet season came again, and then it grew as if it had been newly sown.

I was resolved still to make another trial; and seeking for a moister piece of ground near my bower, there I sowed the rest of my seed in *February*, a little before the vernal equinox, which having the rainy months of *March* and *April* to water it, yielded a noble crop, and sprung up very pleasantly. Part of the seed I had yet saved, not daring to venture all; and my crop amounted to above half a peck of each sort. But by this time I found the proper seasons to sow in; and that two seed times and two harvests I might expect every year.

No sooner were the rains over, and the stakes, which I had cut from the trees, shooting like willow trees the first year af-

ter lopping their heads, than I was ignorant of the tree I cut them from; but they grew so regularly beautiful, that they made a most lovely appearance, and flourished so in three years time, that I resolved to cut some more, and these soon growing, made a glorious fence, as in order I shall observe.

And now I perceived that the seasons of the year might generally be divided, not into summer and winter, as in *Europe*, but into wet and dry seasons, as in this manner :

Half February,	}	<i>Rainy, sun coming near the equinox.</i>
March,		
Half April,	}	<i>Dry, sun getting north of the line.</i>
Half April,		
May,		
June,		
July,	}	<i>Wet, the sun being then come back.</i>
Half August,		
Half August,	}	<i>Dry, sun running south of the line.</i>
September,		
Half October,	}	<i>Dry, sun running south of the line.</i>
Half October,		
November,		
December,		
January,	}	<i>Dry, sun running south of the line.</i>
Half February.		

As the winds happened to blow, so the wet seasons would continue longer or shorter: But when I found the ill consequences of being abroad in the rain, I took care beforehand to furnish myself with provisions, and during the wet months sat within doors as much as possible: And in this time I contrived to make many things that I wanted, though it was with much labour and pains before I could accomplish them. The first I tried was to make a basket; but all the twigs I could get proved so brittle, that I could not then perform it. But now it proved of excellent advantage to me, that when a boy, I took great delight in standing at a basket maker's in the same town where my father lived, to view them at work, and like other boys curious to see the manner of their working these things, and very officious to assist, I perfectly learned the method of it, and wanted nothing but the tools. And then it came into my mind, that the twigs of that tree of which I made my stakes might be as tough as fallow, willow, and osiers, growing in *England*; and so resolving to make an experiment, I went the next day to my country seat, and found some fit for my turn; and cutting down numbers with my hatchet, I dried them in my pale, and when fit to work with,

carried



carried them to my cave, where I employed myself in making several sorts of baskets to put in whatsoever I pleased: It is true they were not cleverly made, yet they served my turn upon all occasions.

But still I wanted two necessary things; I had not any cask to hold my liquor, except two runlets almost full of rum, a few bottles of an ordinary size, and some square case bottles: Neither had I a pot to boil any thing in, only a large kettle, unfit to make broth, or stew a bit of meat in. After this, I wanted a tobacco pipe; for which last I found an expedient.

I kept myself employed in planting my second row of stakes, and worked in this wicker the dry season. You may remember before, that when I travelled up to the brook, I had a mind to see the whole island; accordingly, taking my dog, gun, hatchet, two biscuit cakes, a great bunch of raisins, with a larger quantity of powder and shot than usual, I began my journey. And having passed the vale where my bower stood, I came within view of the sea, lying to the west, when it being a clear day, I fairly descried land, but could not say whether it was an island or a continent: It extended from the W. to the W. S. W. about ten or fifteen leagues, as I concluded. Neither could I tell what place this might be, only thought it was part of *America*, and where I might have been in a miserable condition had I landed. Again, I considered, that if this was the *Spanish* coast, certainly one time or other I should see some ship pass by; and if it was not, then it must be the savage coast, between the *Spanish* country and *Brasil*, which abounds with cannibals or man eaters, that devour human kind.

As I proceeded forward, I found this side of the island much more pleasant than mine, the fields fragrant, and adorned with sweet flowers and verdant grass, together with several very fine woods. There were parrots in plenty, which made me long for one to be my companion; but it was with great difficulty that I could knock it down with my stick; and it was some years I kept him at home, before I could get him to call me by my name.

In the low grounds I found various sorts of hares and foxes, as I thought them, but much different from all I had met with: Several of these I killed, but never ate them; neither indeed had I any occasion; for abounding with goats, pigeons, turtle, and grapes, I could defy *Leadenball* market to furnish me a better table. In this journey I did not travel above two miles in a day, because I took several turns and windings, to see what discoveries I could make; returning weary enough to the place where I designed to rest all night, which was either in a tree, or in a place which I surrounded with stakes, that no wild creature might suddenly surprize me. When

I came to the sea shore, I was amazed to see the splendour of it: Its strand was covered with shells of the most beautiful fish, and constantly abounding with innumerable turtles, and fowls of many kinds, which I was ignorant of, except those called *Penguins*. I might have shot as many as I pleased, but was sparing of my ammunition, rather chusing to kill a she-goat, which with much difficulty I did, because of the flatness of the country.

Now though this journey produced the most pleasing satisfaction, yet my habitation was so natural to me, that I did not repine at my being seated on the worst part of the island: And so travelling about 12 miles towards the *East*, I set a great pile on the shore for a mark, concluding that my next journey should be on the other side of the island, east from my castle, and so round till I came to my post again. However I took another way back, thinking I could not miss by having a constant view of the country; but scarcely had I travelled three miles, when I descended into a very large valley, surrounded with hills that were covered with wood, that I had no guide but by the sun, nor even then, unless I knew well the position of the sun at that time of day. What added to my misfortune was, the weather proved so hazy, for three or four days, as to oblige me to return to my post by the sea side, and so backward the same way I came. My dog surprized a kid in this journey, and would have killed it, had I not prevented him. I had often been musing, whether I could not get a kid or two, and so raise a breed of tame goats to supply me after my ammunition was spent. Upon which, I made a collar for this little creature, with a string made of rope yarn, which I always carried about with me; and when I came to my bower, there I inclosed and left him, and after a month's time in this journey I came home to my old habitation.

Nobody can suppose otherwise, but that I had a pleasing satisfaction, when I returned to my little castle, and reposed myself in my hammock. After this journey I rested myself a week, and the principal concern I then had, was, to make a cage for my pretty Poll. And then I began to consider the poor kid I had left at my bower; and immediately I went to fetch it home. When I came there, I found the young creature almost starved; when feeding it with branches of such shrubs as I could find, I tied it as before; but there was no occasion, for it followed me like a dog; and as I constantly fed it, became so loving, gentle and fond, that it commenced one of my domestics, and would never leave me.

The rainy season of the autumnal equinox being now come, I kept the 30th of *September* in the most solemn manner, as usual, it being the third year of my abode in the island. I spent the whole day in acknowledging God's mercies; in  
giving

giving him thanks for making this solitary life as agreeable, and less sinful, than that of human society; and for the communications of his grace to my soul, supporting, comforting, and encouraging me to depend upon his providence, and hope for his eternal presence in the world to come.

Before I considered how happy I was in this state of life, compared with that accursed manner of living I formerly used, while either I was hunting or viewing the country, the anguish of my soul would break out upon me on a sudden, and my very heart would sink within me, to think of the woods, the mountains, the desarts I was in; and how I was a prisoner, locked up with the eternal bars and belts of the ocean, in an uninhabited wilderness, without hopes and without redemption. And in this condition, I would often wring my hands and weep like a child: Even in the middle of my work, this fit would take me; and then I would immediately sit down and sigh, looking on the ground for an hour or two together, till such time as my grief would be vented, by bursting out into melting tears.

As one morning I was suddenly pondering in my mind, I opened my Bible, when immediately I fixed my eyes upon these words, *I will never leave thee nor forsake thee!* Surely, thought I, these words are directed to me; or else, why should they appear just at a moment when I am bemoaning my forlorn condition? And if God does not forsake me, what matters it, since he can make me more happy in this state of life than if I enjoyed the greatest splendour in the world? But while I was going to return God thanks for my present state, something seemed to shock my mind, as if it had thus said, Unworthy wretch! can you pretend to be thankful for a condition, from which you would pray to be delivered? Here I stopt. And though I could not say, I thanked the Divine Majesty for being there, yet I gave God thanks for placing to my view my former wicked course of life, and granting me a true knowledge of repentance: And whenever I opened or shut the Bible, I blest kind Providence that directed my goods without my order, and for assisting me to save them from the power of the raging ocean.

And now beginning my third year, my several daily employments were these: *First*, My duty to heaven, and diligently reading the Holy Scriptures, which I did twice or thrice every day. *Secondly*, Seeking provision with my gun, which commonly took me up, when it did not rain, three hours every morning. *Thirdly*, The ordering, curing, preserving, and cooking what I had killed or caught for my supply, which took me up a great part of the day: And in the middle of the day, the sun being in it heighth, it was so hot that I could not stir out; so that I had but four hours to work in: And then  
my

my want of tools, help, and skill, wasted a great deal of time; for I was two and forty days making a board fit for a long shelf; whereas, two sawyers, with their tools and saw pit, would have cut several out of the same tree in half a day; but this was the case, it was to be a large tree, because my board was to be broad; I was three days in cutting it down, and two more in lopping off the boughs, and reducing it to a piece of timber; this I hack'd and hew'd off each side till it became light to move, then I turned it, made one side of it smooth and flat as a board, from end to end, then turned it downward, cutting the other side, till I brought the plank to be about three inches thick, and smooth on both sides. Any body may judge my great labour and fatigue in such a piece of work; but this I went through with patience, as also many other things that my circumstances made necessary for me to do.

But now came my harvest months, *November* and *December*, in which I had the pleasing prospect of a very good crop: But such was my misfortune, that the goats and hares having once tasted of the sweetness of the blade, kept it so short, that it had not strength to shoot up into a stalk: To prevent which, I enclosed it with a hedge, and by day, shot some of its devourers; and my dog, which I had tied to the field gate, keeping barking all night, frightened the creatures away.

No sooner did I get rid of these, but other enemies appeared; whole flocks of several sorts of birds, who only waited till my back was turned to ruin me. So much did this provoke me, that I let fly, and killed three of the malefactors; and afterwards, serving them as they do notorious thieves in *England*, hung them up in chains as a terror to others. And indeed so good an effect had this, that they not only forsook the corn, but all that part of the island, so long as these criminals hung there.

My corn having ripened apace, the latter end of *December*, which was my second harvest of the year, I reaped it with a scythe made of one of my broad swords. I had no great fatigue in cutting down my first crop, it was so slender; the ears of which I carried home in a basket, rubbing it out with my hands instead of thrashing it; and when my harvest was over, I found my half peck of seed had produced near two bushels of rice, and two bushels and a half of barley. And now I plainly foresaw that, by God's goodness, I should be furnished with bread; but yet I was concerned, because I knew not how to grind or make meal of my corn; nor bread, neither knew how to bake it. Upon these considerations, I would not taste any of the crop, but preserve it against the next season, and in the mean while use my best endeavours to provide myself with materials to make bread.

But

But where were my labours to end ? The want of a plough to turn up the earth, or shovel to dig it, I conquered, by making me a wooden spade after a wooden manner : The want of a harrow, I supplied myself, by dragging over the corn a great bough of a tree : When it was growing or fully ripe, I was forced to fence it, mow it, carry it home, thrash it, part it from the chaff, and save it : And after all this, I wanted a mill to grind it, sieves to dress it, yeast and salt to make it into bread, and an oven to bake it. This set my brains on work to find some expedient for every one of these necessaries against the next harvest.

And now, having more seed, my first care was to prepare me more land. I pitched upon two large flat pieces of ground near my castle, for that purpose, in which I sowed my seed, and fenced it with a good hedge, which took me up three months, by which time it was the wet season. While the rain kept me within doors, I found several occasions to employ myself ; and while at work used to divert myself with talking to my parrot, learning him to know and speak his own name, POLI, the first welcome word I ever heard spoke on the island. I had been a long time contriving how to make earthen vessels, which I wanted extremely ; and when I considered the heat of the climate, I did not doubt but, if I could find any proper clay, I might botch up a pot, strong enough, when dried in the sun, to bear handling, and to hold any thing that was dry ; as corn, meal, and other things.

To be short, the clay I found ; but it would occasion the most serious person to smile to see what awkward ways I took, and what ugly misshapen things I made ; how many either fell out or crack'd by the violent heat of sun, and fell in pieces when they were removed : So that I think it was two months time before I could perfect any thing ; and after this great fatigue, made two clumsy things in imitation of earthen jars. These, however, I very gently placed in wicker baskets, made on purpose for them, and between the pot and the baskets, stuffed it full of rice and barley straw ; and these I presumed would hold my dried corn, and perhaps the meal when the corn was bruised. But as for smaller things, I made them with better success, which the sun baked very hard, such as little round pots, flat dishes, pitchers, and pipkins.

Yet still I wanted one thing absolutely necessary, and that was an earthen pot, not only to hold any liquid thing, but to bear the fire, which none of these could do. It once happened, that as I was putting out my fire, I found therein a broken piece of one of my vessels, burnt hard as a rock, and red as a tile. This made me contrive how to order my fire, so as to make it burn some pots ; and having no notion of a kiln, or of glazing them with lead, I fixed three large pipkins, and two

or three pots, in a pile one upon another. The fire I plied round the outside and on the top with dry wood, till I saw the pots in the inside red hot, and found that they did not crack at all; and when I perceived them perfectly red, I let one of them stand in the fire about five or six hours, till the clay melted by the extremity of the heat, and would have run to glass, had I suffered it; upon which, I slackt my fire by degrees, till the redness abated; and watching them till the morning, I found I had three very good pipkins, and two earthen pots, as well burnt and fit for my turn as I could desire.

No joy can be greater than mine at this discovery: For after this, I may say, I wanted for no sort of earthen ware. I filled one of my pipkins with water to boil me some meat, which it did admirably well, and with a piece of kid I made me some good broth, as well as my circumstances would afford me at that time.

The next concern I had, was, to make me a stone mortar to beat some corn in, instead of a mill to grind it. Here indeed I was at a great loss, as not being fit for a stone cutter; and many days I spent to find out a great stone big enough to cut hollow and make fit for a mortar, and strong enough to bear the weight of a pestle, as would break the corn without filling it with sand: But all the stones of the island being of a mouldering nature, rendered my search fruitless; and then I resolv'd to look out a great block of hard wood; which having soon found, I formed with my axe and hammer, and then with infinite labour made a hollow place in it, just as the *Indians of Brasil* make their *cances*. When I had finished this, I made a great pestle of iron wood, which I had formerly laid up against my succeeding harvest.

My next business was to make me a sieve, to sift my meal, and part it from the bran and the husk. Having no fine thin canvas to search the meal through, I could not tell what to do; what linen I had was reduced to rags: I had goats' hair enough, but neither tools to work it, nor did I know how to spin it: At length, I remembered I had some neckcloths of callico, or muslin, of the sailors, which I had brought out of the ship, and with these I made three small sieves, proper enough for the work.

And now I come to consider the baking part in course. The want of an oven I supplied by making some earthen pans very broad but not deep. When I had a mind to bake, I made a great fire upon my hearth, the tiles of which I had made myself, and when the wood was burnt into live coals, I spread them all over it, till it became very hot; then sweeping them away, I set down my loaves, and wheeling down the earthen pots upon them, drew the ashes and coals all around the

the outside of the pots to continue the heat : And in this manner I used to bake my barley loaves, as well as if I had been a complete pastry cook, making myself of the rice several cakes and puddings.

It is no wonder that all these things took me up the best part of a year, since what intermediate time I had, was bestowed in managing my new harvest and husbandry ; for in the proper season I reaped my corn, carried it home, and laid it up in the ear in my large baskets, till I had time to rub, instead of thrashing it. And now indeed my corn increased so much, that it produced me about twenty bushels of barley, and as much of rice, that I not only began to use it freely, but was thinking how to enlarge my barns, and was resolved to sow so much at a time as would be sufficient for me a whole year.

All this while the prospect of land, which I had seen from the other side of the island, ran in my mind. I still meditated a deliverance from this place, though the fear of greater misfortunes might have deterred me from it : For after I had attained that place, I run the hazard of being killed and eaten by the devouring cannibals ; and if they were not so, yet I might be slain, as other *Europeans* had been, who fell into their hands. Notwithstanding all this, my thoughts ran continually upon my acquiring that shore : And now I wanted my boy *Xury*, and the long boat, with the shoulder of mutton sail. Then I went the ship's boat that had been cast a great way on the shore in the late storm. She was but a little removed ; but her bottom was turned up by the impetuosity and fury of the waves and wind. With all the strength I had, I tried whatever I could do, with levers and rollers I had cut from the wood, to turn her, and repair the damages she had sustained. This work took me up three or four weeks, when finding my little strength all in vain, I fell to undermining it, by digging away the sand, and to make it fall down, setting pieces of wood to thrust and guide it in the fall. But after this was done, unable was I to stir it up again, or to get under it, much less to move it forward towards the water, and so I was forced to give it over.

Not contented with this disappointment, I began to think whether it were not possible for me to make a canoe or peragua, such as the *Indians* make of the trunk of a tree ; but here I lay under particular inconveniences ; want of tools to make it, and want of hands to move it to the water when it was made. However, to work I went upon it, stopping all the enquiries I could make, with this very simple answer I made to myself, let's first make it, I'll warrant I'll find some way or other to get it along when it is done.

I first cut down a cedar tree, which was five feet ten inches diameter at the lower part next the stump, and four feet eleven inches

inches diameter at the end of twenty two feet, after which it lessened for a space, and then parted into branches. Twenty days was I hacking and hewing this tree at the bottom, fourteen more in cutting off the branches and limbs, and a whole month in shaping it like the bottom of a boat; as for the inside, I was three weeks with a mallet and chissel, clearing it in such a manner as that it was big enough to carry twenty six men, much bigger than any canoe I saw in my life, and consequently sufficient to transport me and all my effects to that wished for shore I so ardently desired.

Nothing remained now, but indeed the greatest difficulty, to get it into the water, it lying about 100 yards from it. To remedy the first inconvenience, which was a rising hill between this boat and the creek, with wonderful pains and labour I dug into the surface of the earth, and made a declivity. But when this was done, all the strength I had was as insufficient to move it, as it was when I attempted to move the boat. Then I proceeded to measure the distance of ground, resolving to make a canal, in order to bring the water to the canoe, since I could not bring the canoe to the water. But as this seemed to be impracticable to myself alone, under the space of eleven or twelve years, it brought me into some sort of consideration, that I concluded it impossible to be done, and so this attempt was in vain also. And now I saw, and not before, what stupidity it is to begin a work before we reckon its costs, or judge right of our own abilities to go through with its performance.

It was in the height of this work, my fourth year expired, since I was cast on this island; and then I did not forget my anniversary, but kept it with the same ardent devotion I had done before. But now my hopes being frustrated, I looked upon this world as a thing I had nothing to do with; and very well might I say, as father *Abraham* unto *Dives*, *Between me and thee there is a gulf fixed*. And indeed from the world I was separated, from its wickedness too, having neither the lust of the flesh, the lust of the eye, or the pride of life: I had nothing to covet; being lord, king, or emperor over the whole country I had in possession, without dispute, and without control. I had loadings of corn, plenty of turtles, timber in abundance, and grapes above measure; but after I was served, what was all the rest to me? The money I had by me lay as despicable dross, which I would freely have given for a gross of tobacco pipes, or a hand mill to grind my corn: In a word, the nature and experience of these things dictated to me this just reflection, that the good things of this world are no farther good to us than they are for our use; and that whatever we may heap up to give others, we can but enjoy as much as we use, and no more.



These thoughts rendered my mind more easy than usual. Every time I sat down to eat, I did it with thankfulness; admiring the providential hand of God, that in this wilderness had spread this table to me. And now I considered what I enjoyed, rather than what I wanted; compared my present condition with what I at first expected it should be; how I should have done, if I had got nothing out of the ship; that I must have perished before I had caught fish or turtles; or lived, had I found them, like a mere savage, by eating them raw, and pulling them in pieces with my claws, like a beast. I next compared my station to that which I deserved; how undutiful I had been to my parents, how destitute of the fear of God; how void of every thing that was good; and how ungrateful for those abundant mercies I had received from heaven; being fed, as it were, by a miracle, even as great *Elijah's* being fed by ravens; and cast on a place where there was no venomous creature to poison or devour me: In short, making God's tender mercies matter of great consolation, I relinquished all sadness, and gave way to contentment.

As long as my ink continued, which, with water, I made last as long as I could, I used to minute down the days of the month on which any remarkable thing happened. And,

First, I observed, That the same day I forsook my parents and friends, and ran away to *Hull*, in order to go to sea, the same day afterward, in the next year, I was taken and made a slave by the *Sallee* rover.

The very day I escaped out of the wreck of the ship in *Nar-mouth* roads, a year after, on the same day, I made my escape from *Sallee*, in my patron's fishing boat.

The 30th of *September*, being the day of the year I was born on, on that day twenty six years after, I was miraculously saved, and cast on shore on this island.

The next thing that wasted, after my ink, was the biscuit which I had brought out of the ship: And though I allowed myself but one cake a day, for above a twelvemonth, yet I was quite out of bread for near a year before I got any corn of my own.

In the next place, my clothes began to decay, and my linen had been gone long before; however, I had preserved about three dozen of the sailors' check shirts, which proved a great refreshment to me, when the violent beams of the sun would not suffer me to bear any of the seamen's heavy watch coats, which made me turn taylor, and, after a miserable botching manner, convert them into jackets. To preserve my head, I made me a cap of goat skin, with the hair outwards, to keep out the rain; which indeed served me so well, that I afterwards made me a waistcoat and open knee'd breeches of the same: And then I contrived a sort of an umbrella, covering

it with skins, which not only kept out the heat of the sun, but the rain also. Thus being easy and settled in my mind, my chiefest happiness was to converse with God, in most heavenly and comfortable ejaculations.

For five years after this I cannot say any extraordinary thing occurred to me. My chief employment was to cure my raisins, and plant my barley and rice, of both which I had a year's provision beforehand. But though I was disappointed in my first canoe, I made it, at intermediate times, my business to make a second, of much inferior size; and it was two years before I finished it. But as I perceived it would no ways answer my design of sailing to the other shore, my thoughts were confined to take a tour round the island, to see what further discoveries I could make. To this intent, after having moved her to the water, and tried how she would sail, I fitted up a little mast to her, and made a sail of the ship's sail that lay by me. I then made lockers or boxes at the end of it, to put in necessary provisions and ammunition, which would preserve them dry either from rain, or the spray of the sea; and in the inside of the boat I cut a long hollow place to lay my gun, and to keep it dry, made a flag to hang over it; my umbrella I fixed in a step in the stern like a mast, to keep the heat of the sun off me: And now, resolving to see the circumference of my little kingdom, I victualled my ship for the voyage, putting in two dozen of my barley bread loaves, an earthen pot full of parched rice, a little bottle of rum, half a goat, powder and shot, and two watch coats. It was the 6th of *November*, in the 6th year of my reign, or captivity, that I set out in this voyage, which was much longer than I expected, being obliged to put further out, by reason of the rocks that lay a great way in the sea: And indeed so much did these rocks surprize me, that I was for putting back, fearing, that if I ventured further it would be out of my power to return. In this confusion I came to an anchor just off shore, to which I waded with my gun on my shoulder, and then, climbing up an hill, which overlooked that point, I saw the full extent of it, and resolved to run all hazard.

In this prospect from the hill, I perceived a violent current running to the east, coming very close to the point; which I the more carefully observed, thinking it dangerous, and that, when I came to it, I might be drove into the sea by its force, and not able to return to the island; and certainly it must have been so, had I not made this observation; for on the other side was the like current, with this difference, that it set off at a greater distance; when I perceived there was a strong eddy under the land, so that my chiefest business was to work out of the first current, and conveniently get into an eddy. Two days I staid here, the wind blowing very briskly E. S. E. which,

which, being contrary to the current, leaves a great breach on the sea upon the point; so it was not fit for me to keep too near the shore, upon account of the breach; nor to stand at too great distance, for fear of the streams. That night the wind abating, it grew so calm that I ventured out; but surely I was to be a memento to all rash and ignorant pilots: For I was no sooner come to the point, and not above the boat's length from the shore, but I was got into a deep water, with a current like a mill, which drove my boat along so violently, that it was impossible for me to keep her so much as to the edge of it; but it forced me more and more out from the eddy to the left of me, and all I could do with my paddles was useless, there being no wind to help me.

Alas! now I began to think myself quite lost; since, as the current ran on both sides of the island, I was very certain they must join again, and then I had no hopes but of perishing for want, in the sea, after what provisions I had was spent, or before, if a storm should happen to arise.

Who can conceive the present anguish of my mind at this calamity? With longing eyes did I look upon my little kingdom, and thought the island the pleasantest place in the universe. Happy, thrice happy desert, said I, shall I never see thee more? Wretched creature! whither am I going? Why did I murmur at my lonesome condition, when now I would give the whole world to be there again? While I was thus contemplating, I found myself to be driven about two leagues into the sea; however, I laboured till my strength was spent, to keep my boat as far north as possibly I could, to that side of the current where the eddy lay on. About noon, I perceived a little breeze of wind spring up from the S. S. E. which overjoyed my heart the more, when, in about half an hour, it blew a gentle fine gale. Had any thick weather sprung up, I had been lost another way; for having no compass on board, I should never have found the way to steer towards the island, if once it had disappeared; but it proving the contrary, I set up my mast again, spread my sail and stood away northward, as much as I could, to get rid of the current: And no sooner did the boat begin to stretch away, but I perceived by the clearness of the water, a change of the current was near; for where it was clear, the current abated. To the east, I soon saw, about half a mile, a breach of the sea upon some rocks, which caus'd it again to separate; and as the main force drove away more southwardly, leaving the rocks to the north east, so the other came back by the repulse of the rocks, making a sharp eddy, which returned back again to the north west with a very swift stream.

They who have experienced what it is to be relieved upon the ladder, or to be saved from thieves just going to take away their

their lives, or else such who have been in the like calamities, may guess my present excess of joy; how heartily I run my boat into the stream of this eddy, and how joyfully I spread my sail to the refreshing wind, standing cheerfully before it with a smart tide under foot. By the assistance of this eddy, I was carried above a league home again, when being in the wake of the island, betwixt the two currents, I found the water to be at a sort of a stand. About four o'clock in the afternoon I reached within a league of the island, and perceived the points of the rock, which caused this disaster, stretching out as I observed before, to the southward, which, throwing off the current more southwardly, had occasioned another eddy to the north. But having a fair brisk gale, I stretched across this eddy, and in an hour came within a mile of the shore, where I soon landed to my unspeakable comfort: And after an humble prostration, thanking God for my deliverance, with a resolution to leave all thoughts of escaping aside, I brought my boat safe into a little cove, and laid me down to take a welcome repose. When I awoke, I was considering how I might get my boat home; and coasting along the shore, I came to a good bay, which ran up to a rivulet or brook, where finding a safe harbour, I stowed her as safe as if she had been in a dry dock made on purpose for her.

And now I perceived myself not far from the place where before I had travelled on foot; when taking nothing with me except my gun and umbrella, I began my journey, and in the evening came to my bower, where I again laid me down to rest. But it was not long before I was awakened, in great surprise, by a strange voice that called me several times, *Robin, Robin, Robin Crusoe, Poor Robin! Where are you, Robin Crusoe? Where are you? Where have you been?*

So fast was I asleep at first, that I did not awake thoroughly; but half asleep and half awake, I thought I dreamt that somebody spoke to me. But as the voice repeated *Robinson Crusoe* several times, being terribly affrighted, I started up in the utmost confusion; when no sooner were my eyes fully open, but I beheld my pretty *Poll* sitting on the top of the hedge, and soon knew that it was he that called me; for just in such bewailing language I used to talk and teach him, which he so exactly learned, that he would sit upon my finger, and lay his bill close to my face, and cry, *Poor Robinson Crusoe, where are you? Where have you been? How came you here?* And such like prattle as I had constantly taught him. But as I knew it to be the parrot, it was a great while before I could adjust myself; first, I was amazed, how the creature got thither, and that he should fix about that place, and no where else. When I was assured it could be no other than my honest *Poll*, my wonder ceased; so reaching out my hand, and calling familiarly,

ly, *Poll*, the creature came to me, and perched upon my thumb, as he was wont, constantly prating to me, with *Poor Robin, in Crusoe*, and *How did I come here?* and *Where had I been?* As if the bird was overjoyed to see me; and so I took him home along with me.

Now though I was pretty well cured of my rambling to sea again, yet I could wish my boat, which had cost me so much trouble and pains, on this side the island once more, which indeed was impracticable. And so I led a very retired life, living near a twelvemonth, in a very contented manner, wanting for nothing except conversation. As to mechanic labours, which my necessities obliged me to, I fancied I could, upon occasion, make a tolerable carpenter, were the tools I had to work withal but good. Besides, as I improved in my earthen ware, I contrived to make them with a wheel, which I found much easier and better; making my work shapeable, which before was rude and ugly. But I think I was never so elevated with my own performance, or project, as for being able to make a tobacco pipe; which though it proved an awkward, clumsy thing, yet it was very sound, and carried the smoke perfectly well, to my great satisfaction.

Also I improved my wicker ware, making me abundance of necessary baskets, which though not very handsome, were very handy and convenient to fetch things home in, as also for holding my stores, barley, rice, and other provisions.

My powder beginning to fail, made me examine after what manner I should kill the goats or birds to live on, after it was all gone. Upon which I contrived many ways to ensnare the goats, and see if I could catch them alive, particularly a she goat with young. At last I had my desire; for making pitfalls and traps, baited with barley and rice, I found one morning in one of them an old he goat, and in the other three kids, one male, the other two females.

So bitterous was the old one, that I could not bring him away. But I forgot the proverb, *That hunger will tame a lion*: For had I kept him three or four days without victuals, and then given him some water with a little corn, he would have been as tame as a young kid. The other creatures I bound with strings together. But I had great difficulty before I could bring them to my habitation. It was some time before they would feed, when throwing them some corn, it so much tempted them, that they began to be tame; from hence I concluded that if I designed to furnish myself with goats' flesh, when my ammunition was spent, the tamely breeding them up like a flock of sheep about my settlement, was the only method I could take. I concluded also, I must separate the wild from the tame, or else they would always run wild as they grew up; and the best way for this was to have some enclosed

piece of ground, well fenced, either with hedge or pale, to keep them so effectually, that those within might not break out, or those without break in. Such an undertaking was very great for one pair of hands ; but as there was an absolute necessity for doing it, my first care was, to find a convenient piece of ground where there was likely to be herbage for them to eat, water to drink, and cover to keep them from the sun.

But here I began madly, pitching upon a piece of meadow land so large, that had I enclosed it with infinite pains, this hedge or pale must have been at least two miles about. Indeed had it been ten miles I had time enough to do it in ; but then I did not consider that my goats would be as wild in so much compass, as if they had had the whole island, and consequently as difficult for me to catch them. And this thought came into my head, after I had carried on, I believe, about fifty yards ; when I resolved to enclose a piece of ground 150 yards in length and 100 in breadth, sufficient enough for as many as would maintain me, till such time as my flock increased, and then I could add more ground. Upon which, I vigorously prosecuted my work, and it took me about three months in hedging the first piece ; in which time I tethered the three kids in the best part of it, feeding them as near me as possible to make them familiar : and indeed very often would I carry some ears of barley, or a handful of rice, and feed them out of my hand ; by which means they grew so tame, that when my enclosure was finished, and I had let them loose, they would run after me for an handful of corn. This indeed answered my end ; and in a year and a half's time I had a flock of about twelve goats, kids and all ; and in two years after, they amounted to three and forty, besides what I had taken and killed for my sustenance. After this, I enclosed five several pieces of ground to feed them in, with pens to drive them into, that I might take them as I had occasion.

But still I had additional blessings, not only in having plenty of goats' flesh, but milk too, which in my beginning I did not so much as think of : And indeed, though I had never milked a cow, much less a goat, or seen butter or cheese made, yet, after some essays and miscarriages, I made me both, and never afterwards wanted.

How mercifully can the Omnipotent Power comfort his creatures, even in the midst of their greatest calamities : How can he sweeten the bitterest Providences, and give us reason to magnify him in dungeons and prisons ! what a bounteous table was here spread in a wilderness for me, when I expected nothing at first but to perish with hunger.

Certainly, a stoic would have smiled to have seen me at dinner ; there was my royal Majesty, an absolute prince and ruler of my kingdom, attended by my dutiful subjects, whom,

if I pleased, I could either hang, draw, quarter, give liberty, or take it away. When I dined, I seemed a King, eating alone, none daring presume to do so till I had done. *Poll*, as if he had been my principal court favourite, was the only person permitted to talk with me. My old but faithful dog, now grown exceeding crazy, and had found no species to multiply his kind upon, continually sat at my right hand; while my two cats sat on each side of the table, expecting a bit from my hand, as a principal mark of my royal favour. Yet these were not the cats I had brought from the ship; they had been dead long before, and interred near my habitation by mine own hand: But one of them, as I suppose, generating with a wild cat, these were the couple I had made tame; whereas the rest run into the woods, and grew so impudent as to return and plunder me of my stores, till such time as I shot a great many, and the rest left me with this attendance. And in this very plentiful manner did I live, wanting for nothing but conversation. One thing more indeed concerned me, the want of my boat. I knew not which way to get her round the island. I resolved one time to go along the shore by land to her, but had any one in *England* met such a figure, it would either affright them, or make them burst into laughter: Nay, myself could not but smile at my habit, which I think, in this place, it is very proper to describe.

The cap I had upon my head was great, high, and shapeless, made of a goat skin, with a flap or penthouse hanging down behind, not only to keep the sun from me, but to shoot the rain off from running into my neck, nothing being more pernicious than the rain falling upon the flesh in these parts. I had a short jacket of goat skin, whose hair hung down such a length on either side, that it reached down the calves of my legs. As for shoes and stockings I had none, but made a resemblance of something, I know not what to call them; they were made like buskins, and laced on the sides like spatter-dashes, barbarously shaped, like the rest of my habit. I had on me a broad belt of goat skin dried, girt round with a couple of thongs instead of buckles; on each of which, to supply the deficiency of sword and dagger, hung my hatchet and saw. I had another belt, not so broad, yet fastened in the same manner, which hung over my shoulder; and at the end of it, under my left arm, hung two pouches, made also of goat skin, to hold my powder and shot. My basket I carried on my back, and my gun on my shoulder, and over my head a great clumsy ugly goat skin umbrella, which, however, next my gun was the most necessary thing about me. As for my face, the colour was not so swarthy as the mulattoes, as might be expected from such a person as I, who took so little care of it in a climate within nine or ten degrees from the equator. At one time

time my beard grew so long, that it hung down above a quarter of a yard ; but as I had both razors and scissars in store, I cut it all off, and suffered none to grow except a large pair of *Mahometan* whiskers, the like of which I had seen worn by some *Turks* at *Sallee*, not long enough to hang a hat upon, but of such a monstrous size, as would have amazed any in *England* to have seen.

But all this was of no consequence here, there being none to observe my behaviour or habit. And so without fear, and without control, I proceeded on my journey, the prosecution of which took me up five or six days. I first travelled along the sea shore, directly to the place where I first brought my boat to an anchor, to get upon the rocks. But now, having no boat to take care of, I went over the land a nearer way, to the same heighth that I was upon before ; when looking forward to the point of the rock which lay out, and which I was forced to double with my boat, I was amazed to see the sea so smooth and quiet, there being no rippling, motion, or current, any more than in other places : Which made me indeed ponder some time to imagine the reason of it, when at last I was convinced how it was, which was this ; the ebb setting from the west, and joining with the currents of waters from some great rivers on the shore, must be the occasion of these rapid streams ; and that consequently as the winds blew more westwardly, or more southerly, so the current came the nearer, or went the further from shore. To satisfy my curiosity, I waited there till evening, when the tide of ebb being made from the rock, I plainly perceived the current again as before, with this difference, that it ran farther off, near half a league from the shore ; whereas in my condition, it set quite upon it, furiously hurrying me and my canoe along with it, which at another time it would not have done. And now I was convinced, that, by observing the ebbing and flowing of the tide, I might easily bring my boat round the island again : But when I began to think of putting it in practice, the remembrance of the late danger I was in, struck me with such horreur, that I changed my resolution, which was more safe, though more laborious ; and this was to make another canoe, and so have one for one side of the island, and one for the other.

Here I think it very proper to inform my readers, that I had two plantations in the island ; the first was my little fortification, fort, or castle, with many large and spacious improvements : For by this time I had enlarged the cave behind me with several little caves, one within another, to hold my baskets, corn and straw. The piles with which I made my wall were grown so lofty and great, as obscured my habitation : And near this commodious and pleasant settlement lay my two well cultivated and improved corn fields, which kindly



ly yielded me their fruit in the proper season. My second plantation was that near my country seat, or little bower, where my grapes flourished, and where, having planted many stakes, I made enclosures for my goats, so strongly fortified by labour and time, that it was much stronger than a wall, and consequently impossible for them to break through. As for my bower itself, I kept it constantly in repair, and cut the trees in such a manner as made them grow thick and wild, and form the most delightful shade. In the centre of this stood my tent, thus erected: I had driven four piles in the ground, spreading over them a piece of the ship's sail; beneath which I made me a sort of a couch with the skins of the creatures I had slain, and other things; and having laid thereon one of the sailors' blankets, which I had saved from the wreck of the ship, and covering myself with a great watch coat, I took up this place for my country retreat.

Very frequently from this settlement did I use to visit my boat, and kept her in very good order. And sometimes I would venture in her a cast or two from shore, but no farther, lest either a strong current, a sudden stormy wind, or some unlucky accident, should hurry me from the island as before. But now I entreat your attention, while I proceed to inform you of a new but most surprising scene of life, wherein I was acting again in a stranger manner.

You may suppose that after I had been here so long, nothing could have been more amazing than to have seen a human creature. But one day it happened, that, going to my boat, I saw the print of a man's naked foot on the shore, very evident on the sand, as the toes, heel, and every part of it. Had I seen an apparition, in the most frightful manner, I could not have been more confounded: My willing ears gave the strictest attention. I cast my eyes around, but neither could satisfy the one or the other. When I proceeded alternately to every part of the shore, still it was all as one; neither could I see any other mark, though the sand about it was as susceptible to take impression as that which was so plainly stamp'd. Thus, struck with confusion and horror, I returned to my habitation, frightened at every bush and tree, as taking them for men; and, being possessed with the wildest ideas, got over I cannot tell how. But that night my eyes never closed, though farther from danger, when even then, I formed nothing but the most dismal imaginations, thinking it must be the mark of the Devil's foot which I had seen: For otherwise how could any mortal body come to this island? And if so, where was the ship that transported them? And what signs of any other footsteps? Though these seem'd very strong reasons for such a supposition, yet, (thought I) why should the Devil make the print of his foot to no purpose, as I can see, when he might have

have taken other ways to have terrified me? Why should he leave his mark on the other side of the island, and that too on the sand, where the surging waves of the ocean might soon have erased the impresson. Surely this action is not consistent with the subtilty of SATAN, said I to myself, but rather must be some dangerous creature, some wild savage of the main land over against me, that, venturing too far in the ocean, was driven here either by the violent currents or contrary winds; and so, not caring to stay on this desolate island, was gone back to sea again.

Happy was I in my thoughts that no savage had seen me in that place, yet much terrified, lest, having found my boat, they should return in numbers and destroy me, or at least carry away all my corn, and destroy my flock of tame goats: In a word, all my religious hopes vanished, as though I thought God could not protect me by his power, who had so wonderfully preserved me so long.

What various chains of Providence there are in the life of man! How changeable are our affections, according to different circumstances? We love to day what we hate to morrow; we shun one hour what we seek the next; and this was evident in me in the most perspicuous manner; for I, who before had so much lamented my condition, in being banished from all human kind, was now almost ready to expire, when I considered that a man had set his foot on this desolate island. But when I considered my station of life, decreed by the infinitely wise and good Providence of God; that I ought not to dispute my Creator's sovereignty, who had an undoubted right to govern and dispose of his creatures as he thinks convenient; and that his justice and mercy could either punish or deliver me: I say, when I considered all this, I comfortably found it my duty to trust sincerely in him, pray ardently to him, and humbly resign myself to his divine will.

One morning, lying on my bed, these words of the sacred writings came again into my mind, *Call upon me in the day of trouble, and I will deliver thee, and thou shalt glorify me.* Upon this sentence, rising more cheerfully from my bed, I offered up my prayers in the most heavenly manner: And when I had done, taking up my Bible to read, these words appeared first in my sight: *Wait on the Lord, and be of good cheer, and he shall strengthen thy heart; wait, I say, on the Lord.* Such divine comfort did this give me, as to remove all cause of sadness upon that occasion.

Thus, after a world of apprehensions and fears, for three days and nights, at last I ventured out of my castle, and milked my goats, one of which was almost spoiled for want of it. I next, though in great fear, visited my bower, and milked my flocks there also; when growing bolder, I went  
down

down to the shore again, and measuring the print of the foot to mine, to see whether, perhaps, I myself had not occasioned that mark, I found it much superior in largeness; and so I returned home possessed with the notion, that either some men had been ashore, or that the island must be inhabited; and therefore, that I might be surpris'd before I was aware.

Struck with a second and more terrible fear, several thoughts of security came into my mind: And that night I was first proposing to cut down my enclosures, and turn my tame cattle wild into the woods, that the enemy might not find them, and frequent the island in hopes of the same. *Secondly*, I was for digging up my corn fields, for the very same reason: And, *Lastly*, I concluded to demolish my bower, lest seeing such a place of human contrivance, they might come farther and attack me in my little castle.

Such notions did the fear of danger suggest unto me; and I looked, I thought, like the unfortunate King *Saul*, when not only oppress'd by the *Philistines*, but also forsaken by God himself: And it is strange, that a little before having entirely resign'd myself to the will of God, I should now have so little confidence in him, fearing those men who might kill this fading body, than him who could destroy my immortal soul.

Sleep was an utter stranger to my eyes that night; yet nature, spent and tired, submitted to a silent repose the next morning: And then, joining reason with my fear, I considered, that this delightful and pleasant island might not be entirely forsaken, as I might think; or that the inhabitants from the other shore might sail either with design or necessity by cross winds; and if the latter circumstance, they departed upon the first opportunity. But still my fear occasioned me to think of a place for retreat, upon an attack. I now repented that I had made the door that came out beyond my fortification; but resolving to make me a second, I drove between that double row of trees, which I planted about twelve years before, several piles, thickening it with pieces of timber and old cables, and strengthening the foot of it with earth which I dug out of my cave. I also made me seven holes, wherein I planted my muskets like cannon, fitting them into frames resembling carriages. This being finished with indefatigable industry, for a great way round I planted sticks of osier like wood, about twenty thousand of them, leaving a large space between them and my wall, that I might have room to see an enemy, and that they might not be sheltered by the young trees, if they offered to approach the outer wall. And indeed scarce two years had pass'd over my head, when there appeared a lovely shady grove, and in six years it became a thick wood perfectly impassable. For my safety, I left no  
avenue

avenue to go in or out ; instead of which I set two ladders ; one to a part of the rock which was low, and then broke in, leaving room to place another ladder upon that ; so that when I took those down, it was impossible for any man to descend without hurting himself ; and if they had, they would still be at the outside of my outer wall. But while I took all these measures of human prudence for my own preservation, I was not altogether unmindful of other affairs : To preserve my flocks of tame goats, that the enemy should not take all at once, I looked out for the most retired part of the island, which was the place where I had lost myself before mentioned, and there finding a clear piece of land, containing three acres, surrounded with thick woods, I worked so hard, that in less than a month's time I fenced it so well round, that my flocks were very well secured in it, putting therein two he goats and two she ones. As this labour was occasioned purely by my fearful apprehensions, on account of seeing the print of a man's foot ; not contented with what I had done, I searched for another place toward the west point of the island, where I might also retain another flock. Then methought I perceived a boat at a great distance in the sea ; but could not possibly tell what it was, for want of my perspective glass. I considered then it was no strange thing to see the print of a man's foot ; and concluding them cannibals, blessed God for my being cast on the other side of the island, where none of the savages, as I thought, ever came. But when I came down the hill to the shore, which was the S. W. point of the island, I was not only amazed, but perfectly confirmed in my opinion : For the place was spread with skulls, hands, feet, and bones of human bodies ; and then I perceived a space like a circle, in the midst of which had been a fire ; about this fire I conjectured these wretches fat, and unnaturally sacrificed and devoured their fellow creatures.

The horror and loathsomeness of this dreadful spectacle both confounded my senses, and made me discharge the violent disorder from my stomach. So that when I had vomited in a very excessive manner, I returned towards my habitation ; and in my way thither shedding floods of tears, and falling down on my bended knees, gave God thanks for making my nature contrary to these wretches, and delivering me so long out of their hands.

Now, though reason and my long residence there had assured me, that these savages never came up to the thick woody parts of the country ; and that I had no occasion to discover myself, who was so perfectly concealed from them ; yet such an abhorrence did I still retain, that, for two years after, I confined myself only to my three plantations ; I mean my cattle, country seat, and enclosure in the woods. And when, in this soli-

tary life, my dreadful apprehensions began to wear away, yet my eyes were more vigilant for fear of being surprized, and I was cautious of firing my gun, lest being heard by those creatures, they should proceed to attack me; but resolving manfully to lose my life if they did, I went armed with three pistols stuck in my girdle, which, added to the description I have given of myself before, made me look with a very formidable appearance.

And thus my circumstances for some time remained very calm and undisturbed. When I compared my condition to others, I found it far from being miserable: And indeed would all persons compare their circumstances, not with those above them, but with those innumerable unhappy objects beneath them, I am sure we should not hear those daily murmurings and complainings that are in the world. For my part, I did not want many things: Indeed the terror which the savages had put me in spoilt some inventions for my own conveniences; one of which was really very ridiculous, except I could accomplish it, and happy it was they hindered me from putting it in practice. My design was to brew me some beer, when I had neither casks sufficient, nor could make any, to preserve it in; neither had I hops to make it keep, yeast to make it work, nor a copper or kettle to make it boil. Perhaps indeed, after some years, I might bring this to bear, as I had done other things: But now my inventions were placed another way; and one was, how I might destroy some of these cannibals, when proceeding to their bloody entertainments; and so saving a victim from being sacrificed, he might after become my servant. Many were my contrivances for this purpose, and as many more objections occurred after I hatched them: For when I contrived to dig a hole under the place where they made their fire, and put therein five or six pounds of gunpowder, which would consequently blow up all those that were near it; why then I was loth to spend so much upon them, lest it should not do that certain execution I could desire; and but only affright, and not kill them. Having laid this design aside, I proposed to myself to lay privately in ambush, in some convenient place, with my three guns double loaded, and let fly at them in the midst of their dreadful ceremony; and having killed two or three of them at every shot, fall upon the rest suddenly with my three pistols, and not let one mother's son escape. And so much did this imagination please my fancy, that I used to dream of it in the night time. To put my design in execution, I was not long seeking for a place very convenient for my purpose, where, unseen, I might behold every action of the savages. Here I placed my two muskets, each of which was loaded with a brace of flugs, and four or five smaller bullets, about the size of pistol bullets;

F

the

the fowling piece was charged with near a handful of the largest swan shot; and in every pistol were about four bullets. And thus all things being prepared, no sooner would the welcome light spread over the element, but, *like a giant refreshed with wine*, as the Scripture has it, would I issue forth from my castle, and, from a lofty hill, three miles distant, view if I could see any invaders approach unlawfully to my kingdom. But having waited in vain two or three months, it not only grew very tiresome to me, but brought me into some consideration, and made me examine myself, what right I had to kill these creatures in this manner?

If (argued I to myself) this unnatural custom of theirs be a sin offensive to heaven, it belongs to the Divine Being, who alone has the vindictive power in his hands, to shower down vengeance upon them: And perhaps he does so, in making them become one another's executioners. Or if not, if God thinks these doings just, according to the knowledge which they conceive, what authority have I to pretend to all the decrees of Providence, which has permitted these actions for so many ages, perhaps from almost the beginning of the creation? They never offended me, what right had I then to concern myself in their shedding one another's blood? And, as I have since known, they value no more to kill and devour a captive taken in war, than we do to kill an ox, or eat mutton. From hence it followed, that these people were no more murderers than Christians, who many times put whole troops to the sword, after throwing down their arms. Again I considered, that if I fell upon them, I should be as much in the wrong as the *Spaniards*, who had committed the greatest barbarities upon these people, who had never offended them in their whole lives; as if the kingdom of *Spain* was eminent for a race of men without common compassion to the miserable, which is reckoned to be a principal sign of the most generous temper. In a word, I concluded never to attack them, whose numbers might overpower me; or that some escaping, might bring thousands to my certain destruction; nor so much as to shew myself, which might oblige me even to a necessary duty of defence. And indeed religion took their part so much, as to convince me, how contrary it was to my duty to be guilty of shedding human blood, innocent as to my particular, whatever they are to one another; and that I had nothing to do with it, but leave it to the God of all power and dominion, as I said before, to do therein what seemed convenient to his heavenly wisdom. And therefore, on my knees, I thanked the Almighty for delivering me from blood guiltiness, and begged his protection that I might never fall into their hands.

Thus, giving over an attempt which I had rashly begun, I never ascended the hill on that occasion afterwards; only I removed

moved my boat which lay on the other side of the island, and every thing, such as they were, that belonged to her, towards the east, into a little cove, that there might not be the least shadow of discovery of any boat near, or habitation upon the island. And then my castle became my cell, keeping very retired in it, except to milk my she goats, and order my little flock in the wood, which was quite out of danger; for sure it is, these savages never came here with expectations to find any thing, and consequently never wandered from the coast; and as they might have several times been on shore, as well before as after my dreadful apprehensions, I looked back with horror to think in what a state I might have been, had I suddenly met them slenderly armed, with one gun only loaded with small shot: And how great would have been my amazement, if, instead of seeing the print of one man's foot, I had perceived fifteen or twenty savages, who, having once set their eyes upon me, by the swiftness of their feet, there was no possibility of my escaping? These thoughts would sink my very soul within me, so that I would fall into a deep melancholy, till such time as the consideration of my gratitude to the Divine Being moved it from my heart. And then I fell into a contemplation of the secret springs of Providence: How wonderfully we are delivered, when we are insensible of it; and when intricated in uncertain mazes or labyrinths of doubt or hesitation, what secret hint shall direct us in the right way, when we intended to go out of it; nay, perhaps, contrary to our business, sense or inclination. Upon which, I fixed within me this as a certain rule, *Never to disobey those secret impressions of my mind, to the acting or not acting any thing that offered, for which I yet could assign no reason*: But let it be how it will, the advantage of this conduct very eminently appeared in the latter part of my abode on this island; I am a stranger in determining whence these secret intimations of Providence derive; yet, methinks, they are not only some proofs of the converse of spirits, but also of the secret communications they are supposed to have with those that have not passed through the gloomy vale of death.

As in these many anxieties of mind, the care of my preservation put a period to all inventions and contrivances, either for future accommodations or conveniences; so I never cared to drive a nail, chop a stick, fire a gun, or make a fire, lest either the noise should be heard or the smoke discover me: And, upon this account, I used to burn my earthen ware privately in a cave which I found in the wood, and which I made convenient for that purpose: But the principal cause that first brought me here, was to make charcoal, so that I might bake and dress my bread and meat, without any danger. While I was cutting down some wood for this purpose, I perceived a cavity

cavity behind a very thick branch of under wood. Curious to look into it, I attained its mouth, and perceived it sufficient for me to stand upright in it. But when I had entered and took a further view, two rolling shining eyes, like flaming stars, seemed to dart themselves at me, so that I made all the haste out that I could, as not knowing whether it was the Devil or a monster that had taken up his residence in that place. But when I recovered from my surprize, I called myself a thousand fools, for being afraid to see the Devil one moment, who had now lived almost twenty years in the most retired solitude: And therefore, resumng all the courage I had, I took up a flaming firebrand, and in I rushed again; when not having proceeded above three steps, I was more affrighted than before; for then I heard a very loud sigh, like that of a human creature in the greatest agony, succeeded with a broken noise, resembling words half expressed, and then a broken sigh again. Stepping back, Lord! (thought I to myself) where am I got? Into what enchanted place have I plunged myself, such as are reported to contain miserable captives, till death puts an end to their sorrow? And indeed such a great amazement was I in, that it struck me with a cold sweat; and had my hat been on my head, I believe my hair would have moved it off. But again, encouraging myself with the hopes of God's protection, I proceeded forward, and, by the light of my firebrand, perceived it to be a monstrous he goat, lying on the ground, gasping for life, and dying of mere old age. When at first I stirred him, thinking to drive him out, the poor ancient creature strove to get upon his feet, but was not able; so I e'en let him lie still, to affright the savages, should they venture into this cave. In the mean time, I looked round me, and found the place but small and shapeless: At the further side of it I perceived a sort of an entrance, yet so low as must oblige me to creep on my hands and knees to it; when, having no candle, I suspended my enterprize till the next day, and then I came provided with six large ones of my own making.

When, upon my hands and feet I had crept through the straight, I found the roof rose higher up, I think, about twenty feet: But surely mortal never saw such a glorious sight in this island before! The roof and walls of this cave reflected a hundred thousand lights to me from my two candles, as though they were indented with shining gold, precious stones, or sparkling diamonds. And indeed it was the most delightful cavity or grotto, of its kind, as could be desired, though entirely dark: The floor was dry and level, and had a kind of gravel upon it; no nauseous venomous creature to be seen there, neither any damp or wet about it: I could find no fault but in the entrance, which I thought might be very necessary



for my defence, and therefore was resolved to make this place my most principal magazine. I brought hither two fowling pieces and three muskets, leaving only five pieces at my castle, planted in the nature of cannon. In a barrel of gunpowder, which I took out of the sea, I brought away about sixty pounds of good powder, which was not damaged; and these, with a great quantity of lead for bullets, I removed from my castle to this retreat, now fortified both by art and nature.

Surely it is no wonder, if at this time I thought myself like one of the giants or old, who were said to live in caves and holes among the rocks, inaccessible to any but themselves, or, at least, most dangerous to attempt. So that now it seems I despised both the cunning and strength of the savages, either to find me out or to hurt me.

But I must not forget the old goat, who caused my late dreadful amazement: The poor creature gave up the ghost the day after my discovery; and it being difficult to drag him out, I dug his grave, and honourably entombed him in the same place where he departed, with as much ceremony as any *Welsh* goat has been interred about the high mountain *Penmenmoure*.

I think I was now in the twenty third year of my reign, and much easier were my thoughts than formerly, contriving several pretty amusements and diversions, to pass away the time in a pleasant manner. By this time my pretty *Poll* had learnt to speak *English*, and pronounce his words very articulately and plain; so that for many hours we used to chat together after a very familiar manner, and he lived with me no less than twenty six years: My dog, who was nineteen years old, sixteen years of which he lived with me, died of mere old age: As for my cats, they multiplied so fast, that I was forced to kill or drive them into the woods, except two or three, which became my particular favourites. Besides these, I continually kept two or three household kids about me which I did learn to feed out of my hand, and two more parrots which would talk indifferently, and call *Robinson Crusoe*, but not so excellent as the first, as not taking that pains with them. Several sea fowls I had also, which having wounded, I cut their wings, and growing tame, they used to breed among the low trees about my castle walls; all which were very agreeable to me.

But what unforeseen events suddenly destroy the enjoyments of this uncertain state of life, when we least expect them! It was now the month of *December*, in the *Southern* solstice, and particular time of my harvest, which required my attendance in the fields; when going out pretty early one morning, before it was day light, there appeared to me, from the sea shore, a flaming light, about two miles from me, at the east end of the island, where I had observed some savages had been, as

before, but not on the other side; but, to my great affliction, it was on my side of the island.

Struck with a terrible surprize, and my usual apprehensions, that the savages would perceive my improvements, I returned directly to my castle, pulled up the ladder after me, making all things look as wild and natural as possibly I could. In the next place I put myself in a posture of defence, by loading my muskets and pistols, and committing myself to God's protection, resolving to defend myself till my latest breath. After two hours space, impatient for intelligence, I set my ladder up to the side of the hill where there was a flat place; and then pulling the ladder after me, ascended the top, where, laying myself on my belly, with my perspective glass, I perceived no less than nine naked savages, sitting round a small fire, eating as I supposed, human flesh, with their two canoes haled upon shore, waiting for the flood to carry them off again. You cannot easily express the consternation I was in at this sight, especially seeing them near me; but when I perceived their coming must be always with the current of the ebb, I became more easy in my thoughts, being very fully convinced, that I might go abroad with security all the time of flood, if they were not before landed. And indeed this proved just as I imagined; for no sooner did they all take boat, and paddle away, but the tide made northwest. Before they went off, they danced, making ridiculous postures and gestures, for above an hour, all stark naked, but whether men, or women, or both, I could not perceive. When I saw them gone I took two guns upon my shoulders, and placing a couple of pistols in my belt, with my great sword hanging by my side, I went to the hill, where at first I made a discovery of these cannibals, and then saw there had been three canoes more of the savages on shore at that place, which, with the rest, were making over to the main land.

But nothing could be more horrid to me, when going to the place of sacrifice, the blood, the bones, and other mangled parts of human bodies, appeared in my sight; and so, fired with indignation, I was fully resolved to be revenged of the first that came there, though I lost my life in the execution. It then appeared to me, that the visits, which they made to this island, were not very frequent, it being fifteen months before they came again; all this time I was very uneasy, by reason of the dismal apprehensions I had of their surprizing me unawares; nor dared I offer to fire a gun on that side of the island where they used to appear, lest taking the alarm, the savages might return with many hundred canoes, and then God knows in what manner I should have made my end: And thus I was a year or more, before I ever saw any of these devouring cannibals again.

But

But to wave this discourse for a while, the following accident demands your attention, which for a while eluded the force of my thoughts in revenging myself on those heathens.

It was the 16th of *May* (according to my wooden calendar) that the wind blew exceedingly hard, accompanied with abundance of lightning and thunder all that day, and succeeded by a very stormy night. What occasioned this I could not imagine; but as the seeming anger of the heavens made me have recourse to the Bible, whilst I was seriously pondering upon it, I was suddenly alarmed with the noise of a gun, which I conjectured was fired upon the ocean. Such an unusual surprize, made me start up in a minute, when, with my ladder, ascending the mountain as before, that very moment a flash of fire prefiged the report of another gun, which I presently heard, and found it was from that part of the sea where the current drove me away. I could not then think otherwise, but that this must be a ship in distress, and that these were the melancholy signals for a speedy deliverance. Indeed, great was my sorrow, upon this occasion, but altogether vain and fruitless. However, I brought together all the dry wood that was at hand, and making a handsome pile set it on fire on the hill. Certain it was, that they plainly perceived it, by their firing another gun, as soon as it began to bluze, and after that several more from the same quarter. All the night long did I keep up this fire; and when the air cleared up, I perceived something a great way at sea directly east, but could not distinguish what it was, even with my glass, by reason the weather was so very foggy out at sea. However, keeping my eyes directly fixt upon it, and perceiving it not to stir, I presently concluded it must be a ship at anchor; and so very hasty I was to be satisfied, that, taking my gun, I went to the south east part of the island, to the same rocks where I had been formerly drove away by the current; in which time the weather being perfectly cleared up, to my great sorrow, I perceived the wreck of a ship cast away upon those hidden rocks, which I found when I was out with my boat; and which, by making a kind of an eddy, were the occasion of my preservation.

Thus, what is one man's safety is another's ruin: For undoubtedly this ship had been driven on them in the night, the wind blowing strong at E. N. E. Now, had they perceived the island, as I could not imagine they did, certainly, instead of firing their guns for help, they might rather have ventured in their boat, and saved themselves that way. Then I thought, that perhaps they had done so, upon seeing my fire, and were cast away in the attempt; for I perceived no boat in the ship. Again, I imagined, that perhaps they had another vessel in company, which, upon signal, saved their lives, and took the boat up: Or lastly, that the boat might be driven into the  
main.

main ocean, where these poor creatures might be in the most miserable condition. But as all these conjectures were very uncertain, I could do no more than commiserate their distress, and thank God for delivering me, in particular, when so many perished in the raging ocean.

When I considered seriously every thing concerning this wreck, I could perceive no room to suppose any of them saved: I cannot explain, by any possible force of words, what longings my soul felt upon this sight, often breaking out in this manner: Oh! that there had been but two or three, nay even one person saved, that we might have lived together, conversed with and comforted one another! And so much were my desires moved, that when I repeated these words, *Oh! that there had been but one!* my hands would so clench together, and my fingers press the palms of my hands so close, that had any soft thing been between, they would have crushed it involuntarily, while my teeth would strike together, and set against each other so strong, that required some time for me to part them.

Till the last year of my being on this island, I never knew if any had been saved out of this ship or not; and had only the affliction some time after, to see the corpse of a drowned boy come on shore, at the end of the island, which was next the shipwreck: There was nothing on him but a seaman's waistcoat, a pair of open knee'd linen drawers and a blue linen shirt; but no particular mark to guess what nation he was of. In his pocket were two pieces of eight and a tobacco pipe, the last of which I preferred much more than I did the first. And now the calmness of the sea tempted me to venture out in my boat to this wreck, not only to get something necessary out of the ship, but perhaps some living creature might be on board, whose life I might preserve. This had such an influence upon my mind, that immediately I went home, and prepared every thing necessary for the voyage, carrying on board my boat, provisions of all sorts, with a good quantity of rum, fresh water and a compass. So putting off, I paddled the canoe along the shore, till I came at last to the N. E. part of the island, from whence I was to launch into the ocean; but here the currents ran so violently, and appeared so terrible, that my heart began to fail me; foreseeing that if I was driven into any of these currents, I might be carried not only out of the reach or sight of the island, but even inevitably lost in the boiling surges of the ocean.

So oppressed was I at these troubles, that I gave over my enterprize, sailing to a little creek on the shore, where stepping out, I sat me down on a rising hill, very pensive and thoughtful. I then perceived, that the tide was turned, and the flood came on, which made it unpracticable for me to go  
out

out for so many hours. To be more certain, how the sets of the tides or currents lay when the flood came in, I ascended a higher piece of ground, which overlooked the sea both ways, and here I found, that as the current of the ebb set out close by the south point of the island, so the current of the flood set in close by the shore of the north side; and all that I had to do, was, to keep to the north of the island in my return.

That night I reposed myself in my canoe, covered with my watch coat instead of a blanket, the heavens being my tester. I set out with the first of the tide full north, till I felt the benefit of the current, which carried me at a great rate eastward, yet not with such impetuosity as before, as to take from me all government of my canoe; so that in two hours time I came up to the wreck, which appeared to me in a most melancholy manner. It seemed to be a *Spanish* vessel by its building, stuck fast between two rocks; her stern and quarters beaten to pieces with the sea; her main mast and fore mast were brought off by the board; as much as to say, broken short off. As I approached nearer, I perceived a dog on board, who perceiving me coming, yelped and cried, and no sooner did I call him, but the poor creature jumped into the sea, out of which I took him almost famished with hunger and thirst: So that when I gave him a cake of bread, no ravenous wolf could devour it more greedily; and he drank to that degree of fresh water, that he would have burst himself had I suffered him.

The first sight I met with in the ship, were two men drowned in the cook room or fore-castle, enclosed in one another's arms: Hence I very probably supposed, that when the vessel struck in the storm, so high and incessantly did the waters break in, and over her, that the men, not being able to bear it, were strangled by the constant rushing in of the waves. There were several casks of liquor, whether wine or brandy, I could not be positive, which lay in the lower hold, as were plainly perceptible by the ebbing out of the water, yet were too large for me to pretend to meddle with: Likewise I perceived several chests, which I thought might belong to the seamen; two of them I got into my boat, without examining then what were in them. Now had the stern of the ship been fixed, and the fore part broken off, certain I am I should have made a very prosperous voyage; since by what I after found in these two chests, I could not otherwise conclude, but that the ship must have abundance of wealth on board: nay, if I must guess by the course she steered, she must have been bound from *Buenos Ayres*, or *Rio de la Plata*, in the southern part of *America*, beyond the *Brazils*, to the *Havanah*, in the gulf of *Mexico*, and so perhaps to *Spain*. What became of the rest of her sailors, I could not certainly tell; and all her riches signified nothing at that time to any body.

Searching

Searching farther, I found a cask, containing about twenty gallons, full of liquor, which with some labour I got into my boat : In a cabin were several muskets, which I let remain there, but took away with me a great powder horn, and about four pounds of powder in it ; I took also a fire shovel and tongs, two brass kettles, a copper pot to make chocolate, and a gridiron, all which were extremely necessary to me, especially the fire shovel and tongs. And so with this cargo, accompanied with my dog, I came away, the tide serving for that purpose ; and that same evening, about an hour within night, I attained the island, after the greatest toil and fatigue imaginable.

That night I reposed my wearied limbs in the boat, resolving the next morning to harbour what I had gotten in my new found subterraneous grotto, and not carry my cargo home to my ancient castle. When I had refreshed myself, and got all my effects on shore, I proceeded to examine the particulars : And so tapping the cask, I found the liquor to be a kind of rum, but not like what we had at the *Brazils*, nor indeed near so good. At the opening of the chest, several things appeared very useful to me : For instance, I found in one a very fine case of bottles, containing the finest and best sorts of cordial waters : Each bottle held about three pints, curiously tipped with silver. I found also two pots full of the choicest sweet-meats, and two more which the water had utterly spoiled. There were likewise several good shirts, exceedingly welcome to me, and about a dozen and a half of linen white handkerchiefs and coloured neckcloths, the former of which were absolutely necessary for wiping my face in a hot day ; and in the till, I found three bags of pieces of eight, about eleven hundred in all ; in all of which, decently wrapt up in a piece of paper, were six doubloons of gold, and some small bars and wedges of the same metal, which I believe might weigh near a pound. In the other chest, which I guessed to belong to the gunner's mate, by the mean circumstances that attended it, I only found some clothes of very little value, except about two pounds of fine glazed powder, in three flasks, kept, as I believe, for charging their fowling-pieces on any occasion. So that on the whole, I had no great advantage by this voyage : The money was indeed as mere dirt to me, useless and unprofitable, all which I would have freely parted with for two or three *English* pair of shoes and stockings ; things that for many years I had not worn ; except lately those which I had taken off the feet of those unfortunate men I found drowned in the wreck, yet not so good as *English* shoes, either for ease or service : And having found in the seamen's chest about fifty pieces of eight in rials, but no gold, I suppose what I took from the first belonged to an officer, to whom this seemed to have a much inferior

inferior person its owner. Well, the money, as despicable as it seemed, I likewise lugged to my cave, laying it up securely as I did the rest of my cargo. After I had done all this, I returned back to my boat, rowing or paddling her along till I came to my old harbour, where I carefully laid her up, and so made the best of my way to my castle. When I arrived there, every thing seemed safe and quiet; so that now my only business, was to repose myself after my wonted manner, and take care of my domestic affairs. But though I might have lived very easy, as wanting for nothing absolutely needful, yet still I was more vigilant than usual on account of the savages, never going much abroad; or if I did, it was to the *East* part of the island, where I was well assured that the savages never came, and where I might not be troubled to carry that heavy load of weapons for my defence, as I was obliged to do if I went the other way.

Two years did I live in this anxious condition, in all which time, contrary to my former resolutions, my heart was filled with nothing but projects and designs how I might escape from this island: And so much were my wandering thoughts bent on a rambling disposition, that had I the same boat I went from *Sallee* in, I should have ventured once more to the uncertainty of the raging ocean.

But certainly I was an unhappy instance of that part of mankind, who make themselves wretched by their dissatisfaction with the station which God has placed them in: For not to take a review of my primitive condition, and my father's excellent advice, the contrary to which was, as I may say, my *original sin*, my following mistakes, of the same nature, had been the means of my present unhappy station. What business had I to leave a settled fortune, and well stocked plantation, improving and increasing, where by this time I might have been worth a hundred thousand moidores, to turn supercargo to *Guinea*, to fetch *Negroes*, when time and patience would have so much enlarged our stock at home, as to be able to employ those, whose more immediate business it was to fetch them home, even to our doors?

But as this is very commonly the fate of young heads, so as a serious reflection upon the folly of it, ordinarily attends the exercise of future years, when the dear bought experience of time is so much repented of. Thus it was with me, at that season; but notwithstanding what I had, or might suffer upon these occasions, the thoughts of my deliverance ran so strongly in my mind, as seemed to check all the dictates of my poor reason and philosophy. And now to usher my kind reader, with greater pleasure to the remaining part of my relations, I flatter myself it will not be taken amiss to give him

an account of my first conceptions on the manner of escaping, and upon what foundation I laid out my foolish schemes.

I must now suppose myself retired to my castle, after my late voyage to the ship, my frigate laid up and secured, as usual, and my condition in the same manner as before, except being richer; though I had as little occasion for riches as the *Indians of Peru* had for gold, before the cruel *Spaniards* came among them. One night in *March*, being the rainy season, in the four and twentieth year of this my solitude, I was lying on my bed awake, very well in health, without distemper, pain, or uncommon uneasiness, either of body or mind; yet for all this, I could not compose myself to sleep the night long. All this tedious while, it is impossible to express what innumerable thoughts came into my head: I traced quite over the whole history of my life in miniature, from my utmost remembrance of things, till I came to this island; and then proceeded to examine every action and passage that had occurred, since I had taken possession of my kingdom. In my reflections upon the latter I was comparing my happy posture of affairs in the beginning of my reign, to this life of anxiety, fear and concern, since I discovered the print of a foot in the sand; that while I continued free without notions, I was capable of forming any dreadful apprehensions; though I ought rather to be thankful for the knowledge of my danger, since then it was the greatest happiness to have sufficient time to provide for my reflection: How stupendous is the goodness of providence, which sets such narrow bounds to the sight and knowledge of human nature, that while men walk in the midst of so many dangers that surround them, till perhaps they are dissipated and vanished quite away.

And when I came more particularly to consider of the real danger I had for so many years escaped; how I had walked about in the greatest security and tranquillity at a time, perhaps when even nothing but the brow of a hill, a great tree, or the common approach of night, had only interposed between me and the destructive hands of the cannibals, who would devour me with as good an appetite as I would a pigeon or curlew. Surely all this, I say, could not but make me sincerely thankful to my great preserver, whose singular protection I acknowledged with the greatest humility, and without which I must inevitably have fallen into the cruel hands of these devourers.

Thus having discussed these thoughts in the clearest manner according to my weak understanding, I next proceeded to consider the wretched nature of these destroying savages, by seeming, though with great reverence, to inquire why God should give up any of his creatures to such inhumanity, even to brutality itself, to devour its own kind? But as this was rather matter of abstruse speculation, it better became me to enquire,  
 what



what part of the world these wretches lived in ; how far off the coast was from whence they came ; why they ventured over so far from home ; what kind of boats conveyed them hither ; and why I could not order myself, and my business so, that I might be as able to attain their country, as they were to come to my kingdom.

Never had I the least thoughts how I should manage myself when I should go thither ; what would become of me if I fell into the hands of the savages ; or how I should escape from them if they made an attempt upon me. And supposing I should fall into their power, what could I do for provision, or which way shou'd I bend my course ? Now though these things did express the greatest horror and confusion imaginable, yet still I looked upon my present condition the most miserable that possibly could be, and that nothing could be worse except death. For (thought I) could I but attain the shore of the main, I might perhaps meet with some relief, or coast it along, as I did with my boy *Xury*, on the *African* shore, till I came to some inhabited country, where I might meet with some relief, or fall in with some christian ship that might take me in ; and if I failed, why then I could but meet with death, which would put an end to all my miseries. But yet I must here note, that all this was the fruit of a disordered mind ; an impatient temper, made desperate, as it were, by long continuance of the troubles and the disappointments I had met with in the wreck, where I hoped to have found some living person to speak to, by whom I might have known in what place I was, and of the probable means of my deliverance. Thus, while my thoughts were agitated, my resignation to the will of heaven was entirely suspended ; so that I had no power to fix my mind to any thing but the project of a voyage to the main. And indeed so much was I inflamed upon this account, that it set my blood into a ferment, and my pulse beat high as though I had been in a fever ; till nature being, as it were, fatigued and exhausted with the very thoughts of it, made me submit myself to a silent repose.

Certainly it is very strange, that I did not dream of what I was so intent upon ; but instead of which, my mind roved on a quite different thing, altogether foreign to it. I dreamt, that as I was issuing from my castle one morning, as customary, I perceived upon the shore two canoes, and eleven savages coming to land, who had brought with them another *Indian*, whom they designed to make a sacrifice of, in order to devour : But just as they were going to give the fatal blow, methought the poor designed victim jump'd away, and ran directly into a little thick grove before my fortification, to abscond from his enemies ; when, perceiving that the others did not follow him that way, I appeared to him ; that he humbly kneel'd down

before me, seeming to pray for my assistance; upon which I shewed him my ladder, made him ascend, carried him to my cave, and he became my servant; and when I had gotten this man, I said to myself, now surely I may have some hopes to attain the main land; for this fellow will serve me as a pilot, tell me what to do, and where I must go for provisions; what places to shun, what to venture to, and what to escape. But when I awak'd, and found all these inexpressible impressions of joy entirely vanished, I fell into the greatest dejection of spirits imaginable.

Yet, after all, I made this conclusion, that my only way of escaping was to get a savage; and after I had ventur'd my life to deliver him from the bloody jaws of his devourers, the natural sense he might have of such a preservation, might inspire him with a lasting gratitude and most sincere affection. But then this objection reasonably interpos'd: How can I effect this (thought I) without I attack a whole caravan of them, and kill them all? Why should I proceed on such a desperate attempt, which my scruples had before suggested to me were unlawful, and made my heart tremble at the thoughts of so much blood, though it were a means to procure my deliverance! And though I might, according to my reason, suppose that these men were the real enemies to my life, and would devour me, were it in their power, so that it was self preservation in the highest degree, to free myself from this dread of death, by acting in my own defence, as if they were actually assaulting me: Though all these things, I say, seemed to me to be of the greatest weight; yet, as I just said before, the dreadful thoughts of shedding human blood, struck such a terrour to my soul, that it was a long time before I could reconcile myself to it.

But how far will the ardency of desire prompt us on? For notwithstanding the many disputes and perplexities I had with myself about it; right or wrong, I was resolv'd to get one of these savages into my hands, let it cost what it would, or lose my life in the attempt. Thus inspired with a firm resolution, all my wits were at work, in the next place, to find out what methods I should take to answer my design; and this indeed was very difficult to resolve on. Since then I could not pitch upon any probable means for it, I resolv'd continually to be in a vigilant posture, to perceive when the savages came on shore, and so leave the rest to the event, let the opportunities offer as they would.

Such was my fixed resolution, and accordingly I set myself upon the scout as often as I could, till such time as I was heartily tired of it. I waited for above a year and a half, the greatest part of which time I went out to the west end, and south west corner of the island, almost every day, to see for canoes, but none appeared. This was a very great discouragement,

at which I was very much concerned ; yet never did this wear off the edge of my desire to the thing ; but the longer it seemed to be delayed, the more eager I was for it : In a word, I was never at first so careful to shun the loathed sight of these savages, as I was now eager to be upon them. Besides, I thought myself sufficiently able to manage one, two or three savages if I had them, so as to make them my entire slaves, to do whatsoever I should direct them, and prevent their being able at any time of doing me a mischief. Many a time did I use to please myself with this affair, with long and ardent expectations, but nothing yet presented ; all my deep projected schemes and numerous fancies vanished away, as though, while I retained those thoughts, the decree of providence was such, that no savages were to come near me.

It was about a year and a half, that as I was most seriously musing of fundry ways how I should attain my end, one morning early I was very much surpris'd by seeing no less than five canoes all on shore together, on my side the island, and the creatures that belonged to them all landed, and out of my sight. Such a number of them disconcerted all my measures ; for seeing so many boats, each of which would contain six, and sometimes more, I could not tell what to think of it, or how to order my measures, to attack twenty or thirty men single handed : Upon which, much discomfited and perplexed, I lay still in my castle ; however I put myself in the same posture for an attack, that I had formerly provided against, and was ready to enter upon an engagement, should they attempt it. But when I had waited a long while, till such time as my impatient temper would let me bear it no longer, I set my guns at the foot of my ladder, and as usual ascended up to the top of the hill at two stages ; however, standing that my head did not appear above the hill so that by any means they could not perceive me ; and here I observed, by the assistance of my perspective glass, no less than thirty in number around a fire, feasting upon what meat they had dress'd : How they cooked it, or what it was, I could not then perfectly tell ; but they were all dancing and capering about the flames, using many frightful and barbarous gestures.

But while with a curious eye I was beholding these wretches, my spirits sunk within me, when I perceived them drag two miserable creatures from the boats to act afresh the dreadful tragedy, as I supposed they had done before. It was not long before one of them fell upon the ground, knocked down, as I supposed, with a club, or wooden sword ; for that was their manner, while two or three others went immediately to work, cutting him open for their cookery, and then fell to devour him as they had done the former, while the last unhappy captive, was left by himself till such time as they were ready for him.

him. The poor creature looked round him with a wishful eye, trembling at the thoughts of death, yet seeing himself a little at liberty, nature that very moment as it were inspired him with hopes of life, that he started away from them, and ran with incredible swiftness along the sands directly to that part of the coast where my ancient and venerable castle stood.

You may imagine I was dreadfully affrighted upon this occasion, when as I thought, they pursued him in a whole body, all running towards my palace. And now indeed I expected that part of my dream was going to be fulfilled, and that he would certainly fly to my grove for protection; but for the rest of my dream I could depend nothing on it, that the savages would pursue him thither and find him there. However my spirits beginning to recover, I still kept upon my guard, when I plainly perceived there were but three men out of the number, that pursued him; and I was infinitely pleased with what swiftness the poor creature ran from his pursuers, gaining much ground of them, that I plainly perceived, could he thus hold it for half an hour, there was not the least doubt but he would save his life from the power of his enemies.

Between them and my castle there was a creek, that very same where I sailed into with all my effects from the wreck of the ship, on the steep banks of which I very much feared the poor victim would be taken, if he could not swim for his escape: But I was soon out of pain for him when he made nothing of it though at full tide; but with an intrepid courage, spurred on by the sense of danger, he plunged into the flood, swimming over in about thirty strokes, and then landing, ran with the same wonderful strength and swiftness as before. When the three pursuers came to the creek, one of them, whom I perceived could not swim, happily for his part, returned back to his company; while the others with as equal courage, but much less swiftness, attained the other side, as though they were resolved never to give over their pursuit. And now, or never, I thought was the time for me to procure a servant, companion or assistant; and that I was decreed by providence to be the instrument that should save this poor creature's life. I immediately descended my two ladders with the greatest expedition, took up my two guns, which I said before were at the bottom of them; and getting up again, with the same haste towards the hill, I made nearer the sea: In a word, taking a short cut down the hill, I interposed between the pursuers and the pursued, hallooing aloud to the latter, who venturing to look back, was no doubt at first as much terrified at me as them. I beckoned to him with my hand to return back, in the mean time slowly advancing towards the pursuers; when suddenly rushing on the foremost, I knocked him down with the stock of my piece, and laid him flat

flat on the ground. I was very unwilling to fire lest the rest should hear, though at that distance I question whether they could or not; and being out of sight of the smoke, they could not easily have known what to make of it. The other savage seeing his fellow fall, stopt as if he had been amazed, when advancing towards him, I could perceive him take his bow from his back, and fixing an arrow to it, was preparing to shoot at me, and without dispute might have lodged the arrow in my breast, had I given him leave; but in this absolutely necessary cause of self preservation, I immediately fired at him, and shot him dead, just as his hand was going to draw the fatal string. All this while the savage who had fled before, stood still, had the satisfaction to see his enemies fall, or killed as he thought, who designed to take away his life: So affrighted was he with the fire and noise of my piece, that he stood as it were, like *Lot's* wife, fixt and immoveable, without sense, and without motion. This made me halloo to him again, making the plainest signs I could to him to draw nearer: I perceived he understood these tokens, by his approaching to me a little way, when, as if afraid I should kill him too, he stopt again. Several times did he advance, and as often stopt in this manner, till coming more to my view, I perceived him trembling, as if he was to undergo the same fate. Upon which I looked upon him with a smiling countenance, and still beckoning to him, at length he came close to me, kneeled down, kissed the ground, laid his head upon it, and taking me by my foot, set the same upon his head: And this, as I understood afterwards, was a token of swearing to be my slave forever. I took him up, and making very much of him, encouraged him in the best manner I could. But here my work was not yet finished; for I perceived the savage whom I knocked down, was not killed, but stunned with the blow, and began to come to himself. Upon which I pointed to my new servant, and shewing him that his enemy was not yet expired, he spoke some words to me, but what I could not understand; yet being the first sound of a man's voice I had heard for above these twenty five years, they were very pleasing to me. But there was no time for reflection now, the wounded savage recovering himself so far as to sit upon the ground, which made my poor prisoner as much afraid as before: To put him out of which fear I presented my other gun at the man, with an intent to shoot him; but my savage, for so I must now call him, prevented my firing, by making a motion to me to lend him my sword, which hung raked in a belt by my side. No sooner did I grant his request, but away he runs to his enemy, and at one blow cut off his head, as dexterously as the most accomplished executioner in *Germany* could have done: For it seems these creatures make use of wooden swords, made of hard wood, which will bear an

edge, enough to cut off heads and arms at one blow. When this valorous exploit was done, he came to me laughing, and as a token of triumph, delivered me my sword again with abundance of surprizing gestures, laying it along with the bleeding and ghastly head of the *Indian* at my feet.

The greatest astonishment that my new servant conceived, was the manner of killing the savage at such a distance without a bow and arrow: And such was his longing desire to know it, that he first pointed to the dead creature, and then made signs to me to grant him leave to go to him. Upon which I bid him go, and as well as I could made him sensible I granted his request. But when he came there, how wonderfully was he stricken with amazement! first he turned him on one side, then on the other, wondering he could perceive no quantity of blood, he bleeding inwardly: And after sufficiently admiring the wound the bullet had made in his breast, he took up his bow and arrows, and came back again; upon which I turned to go away, making many signs to him to follow, lest the rest, missing their companions, might come in pursuit of him. And this I found he understood very well, by his making me understand that his design was to bury them, that it might not be seen if it happened; and which by signs again, I made him sensible I very much approved of. Immediately he fell to work, and never was grave digger more dexterous in the world than he was; for in an instant, as I might say, he scraped a large hole in the sand with his hands, sufficient to bury the first in, there he dragged him, and without any ceremony covered him over. In like manner he served the other: So that I am sure no undertaker could be more expert in his business, for all this was done in less than a quarter of an hour. I then called him away, and instead of carrying him directly to my castle at first, I conveyed him to my cave on the further part of the island: And so my dream was not fulfilled in that particular, that my grove should prove an asylum or sanctuary to him.

Weary and faint, hungry and thirsty, undoubtedly must this poor creature be, supported chiefly by that vivacity of spirit, and uncommon transports of joy, that his deliverance occasioned. Here I gave him bread, and a bunch of raisins to eat, and water to drink, of which feeding very cheerfully, to his exceeding refreshment, I made him a convenient bed with a parcel of rice straw, and a blanket upon it, (a bed which I used myself sometimes) and then pointing to him made signs for him to lie down to sleep, upon which the poor creature went to take a welcome repose.

Indeed he was a very comely handsome young fellow, extremely well made, with strait long limbs, not too large; tall, and well shaped; and, as I could reckon, about twenty six years of age. His countenance had nothing in it fierce and  
 furly,

furly, but rather a sort of majesty in his face; and yet, especially when he smiled, he had all the sweetness and softness of an *European*. His hair was not curled like wool, as many of the blacks are, but long and black, with the most beautiful, yet careless tresses spreading over his shoulders. He had a very high and large forehead, with a great vivacity and sparkling sharpness in his eyes. His skin was not so tawny as the *Virginians*, *Brazilians*, or other *Americans*, but rather of a bright dun olive colour, that had something agreeable in it, though not very easy to give a description of. His face was round and plump, with a small nose, very different from the flatness of the negroes, a pretty small mouth, thin lips, fine teeth, very well set, and white as the driven snow. In a word, such handsome features, and exact symmetry in every part, made me consider that I had saved the life of an *Indian* prince, no less graceful and accomplished, than the great *Oroonoko*, whose memorable behaviour, and unhappy contingencies of life, has charmed the world both to admiration of his person and compassion to his sufferings.

But let him be either prince or peasant all my happiness centered in this, that I had now got a good servant, or companion, to whom, as he deserved, I was resolved to prove a kind master, and lasting friend. He had not, I think, slept above an hour, but he awakened again, and while I was milking my goats hard by, out he ran from the cave, towards me in my enclosure, and laying himself down on the ground in the lowest prostration, made all the antic gestures imaginable, to express his thankfulness to me for being his deliverer. I confess, though the manner of his behaviour seemed to be ludicrous enough to occasion laughter; yet I was very much moved at his affection, so that my heart melted within me, fearing he might die away in excess of joy, like reprieved malefactors; and then I was incapable either to let him blood, or administer physic. And I with many christians would take example by this heathen, to have a lasting remembrance of those great benefits and deliverances they have received, by the kind mediation and powerful interposition of their benefactors and deliverers: And I should be glad also, if I had no occasion to blame many, who instead of thankfully acknowledging these kind of favours and benefits, rather abuse and contemn those good persons who have been the principal instruments to save them from destruction.

But leaving these very just reflections, I must return to the object that occasioned them: For my man, to conclude the last ceremony of obedience, laid down his head again on the ground, close to my foot, and set my other foot upon his head, as he had done before, making all the signs of subjection, servitude and submission imaginable, to let me understand he  
would

would serve me as long as his life endured. As I understood him in many things, I made him sensible I was very well pleased with him; and in a little time I began to speak to him, and learn him how to talk to me again. In the first place I made him to understand his name to be *Friday*, because it was upon that day I saved his life. Then I taught him to say *Master*, which I made him sensible was to be my name. I likewise learned him to say yes and no, and to know what they meant. I gave him some milk in an earthen pot, making him view me while I drank it before him, and soped my bread in it; and I gave him a cake of bread, causing him to do the like, to which he readily consented, making signs of the greatest satisfaction imaginable.

All that night did I keep him there, but no sooner did the morning light appear, when I ordered him to arise and come along with me, with certain tokens that I would give him some clothes like mine; at which he seemed very glad, as being stark naked, not so much as any thing to cover what ought to be concealed. As we passed by the place where the two men had been interred, my man pointed directly to their graves, shewing me the marks that he had made to find them again; giving me to understand by signs, that he should dig them up and devour them: Upon which I appeared extremely displeas'd, expressed my utmost abhorrence, made as if I would vomit at the apprehensions of it, beckoning him with my hand to come away, which he did with the greatest reverence and submission. After this I conducted him to the top of the hill, to view if the rest of the savages were yet remaining there; but when I looked through my perspective glass, I could see no appearance of them, nor of their canoes, so that it was very evident they never minded their deceased companions whom he had slain, which if they had, they would surely have searched for, or left one boat behind for them to follow, after they returned to their pursuit.

But still my curiosity and desire of satisfaction animating my spirit with fresh courage, I took my man *Friday* with me, putting a sword into his hand, with the bow and arrows at his back, which I perceived he could use very dexterously, causing him to carry one gun for me, and I two for myself; and thus equipped against all attacks, away we marched directly to the place of their bloody entertainment. But when I came there, I was stricken with the usual horror at so dreadful a spectacle; whilst *Friday* indeed was no way concerned about it; being, no doubt, in his turn, like one of these devourers. Here lay several human bones, there several pieces of mangled flesh, half eaten, mangled and scorched; whilst streams of blood ran promiscuously as water from a fountain. As I was musing at this dreadful sight, *Friday* took all the pains he could, by  
particular



particular signs, to make me understand, that they had brought over four prisoners to feast upon, three of which they had eaten, and that as he was the fourth, pointing to himself: That there had been a bloody battle between them and his great king, in the just defence of whom he was taken prisoner, with many others; all which were carried to several places to be devoured by these conquerors, and that it was his fortune to be brought hither by these wretches, for the same purpose.

After I was made sensible of these things, I caused *Friday* to gather those horrid remains, and lay them together upon a heap, which I ordered to be set on fire and so burnt them to ashes: And still I found my man retained the nature of a cannibal, having a hankering stomach after some of the flesh: But such an extreme abhorrence did I express at the last appearance of it, that he durst no otherwise than conceal; for I made him very sensible that if he offered any such thing I would certainly shoot him.

All this being done, I carried my man with me to my castle; and then I gave him a pair of linen drawers, which I had taken out of the poor gunner's chest before mentioned; and which with a little alteration fitted him very well: In the next place I made him a jerkin of goat's skin, such as my skill was able to manage, though I thought myself then a tolerable good taylor. I gave him also a cap, which I made of a hare's skin, very convenient and fashionable. Thus being clothed tolerably well, my man was no less proud of his habit, than I was in seeing him in it. Indeed he went very awkwardly in these things at first, the drawers being too heavy on his thighs, not used to wear any weight, and the sleeves of the waistcoat galled his shoulders, and the inside of his arms; but a little easing them, where he complained they hurt him, and using himself to them, at length he took to them very well.

My next concern was where I should lodge him; and that I might do very well by him, and yet be perfectly easy myself, I erected a tent for him in the vacant place between my two fortifications, in the inside of the last, and outside of the first: And as there was an entrance or door in my cave, I made a formal framed door case, and a door to open on the inside. I barred it up in the night time, taking in my ladders too; so that was my man to prove treacherous, there would be no way to come at me in the inside of my innermost wall, without making so much noise in getting over, that it must needs waken me; for my first wall had now a complete roof over it of long poles, spreading over my tent, and leaning up to the side of the mountain, which was again laid across with smaller sticks instead of laths, thatched over a great thickness with the rice straw, which was as strong as reeds; and at the hole of the place, left on purpose to go in or out by the ladder, I had placed

placed a kind of trap door, which if it had been attempted on the outside, would not have opened at all, but have fallen down and made a great noise; and as to my weapons, every night I took them all to my bed side.

But there was no occasion for this precaution; for surely never master had more sincere, faithful and loving servant than *Friday* proved to me; without passion, fullness or design, perfectly obliging and engaging: His affections were as much tied to me, as those of a child to his parents; and I might venture to say, he would have sacrificed his life for the saving of mine, upon any occasion whatsoever. And indeed the many testimonies he gave me of this, very sufficiently convinced me, that I had no occasion to use these precautions. And here I could not but reflect, with great wonder, that however it has pleased the Almighty in his Providence, and in the government of the creation, to take from so great a part of the world of his creatures, the noblest uses to which their faculties, and the powers of their souls are adapted; yet that he has bestowed upon them the same reason, affections, sentiments of kindness and obligation, passions of resentment, sincerity, fidelity, and all the capacities of doing and receiving good, that he has given us; and that when he is graciously pleased to offer them occasions of exerting these, they are as ready, nay, more ready to apply them to the proper uses for which they were bestowed, than we are sometimes. These thoughts would make me very melancholy, especially when I considered how mean a use we make of all these, even though we have these powers enlightened by the holy spirit of God, and by the knowledge of his word, as an addition to our understanding; and why it has pleased the heavenly wisdom to conceal the like saving knowledge from so many millions of souls, who would certainly make a much better use of it, than mankind generally do at this time. And these reflections would sometimes lead me so far, as to invade the sovereignty of Providence, and, as it were arraign the justice of such arbitrary disposition of things, that should obscure that light from some, and reveal it to others, and yet expect a like duty from all. But I closed it up, checking my thoughts with this conclusion: *First*, that we were ignorant of that right and law by which these should be condemned; but that, as the Almighty was necessarily, and by the nature of his essence, infinitely just and holy; so it could not be otherwise, but that if these creatures were all destined to absence from himself, it was on account of sinning against that light which, as the scripture says, was a law to themselves, and by such rules as their conscience would acknowledge to be just, though the first foundation was not discovered to us; and, *secondly*, that still as we are the clay

clay in the hand of the potter, no vessel could thus say to him, Why hast thou fashioned me after this manner.

I had not been above two or three days returned to my castle, but my chief design was, how I should bring *Friday* off from his horrid way of feeding; and to take from him that inhuman relish he, by nature, had been accustomed to, I thought it my duty to let him taste other flesh, which might the rather tempt him to the same abhorrence I so often expressed against their accursed way of living. Upon which, one morning, I took him out with me, with an intention to kill a kid out of the flock, and bring it home and dress it: But as I was going, I perceived a she goat lying down in the shade, and two young kids sitting by her. Immediately I caught hold of my man *Friday* and bidding him stand still, and not stir, I presented my piece, and shot one of the kids. My poor servant, who had at a distance perceived me kill his adversary, and yet did not know by what means, or how it was done, stood trembling and surprized, and looked so amazed, that I thought he would have sunk into the earth. He did not see the kid I aimed at, or beheld I had killed it, but ript up his waistcoat to see if he was not wounded, thinking my resolution was to kill him; so coming to me, he fell on his knees, earnestly pronouncing many things which I did not understand, the meaning of which at length I perceived was, that I would not take away his life.

Indeed I was much concerned to see him in that condition where nature is upon the severest trial, when the immediate hand of death is ready to put for ever a period to this mortal life: And indeed so much compassion had I for this creature, that it was with difficulty I refrained from tears. But, however, as another sort of countenance was necessary, to convince him that I would do him no harm, I, smiling, took him by the hand, then laughed at him, and pointing to the kid which I had slain, made signs to him to fetch it, which accordingly he did. He was no less curious in viewing how the creature was killed, than he had been before in beholding the *Indian*; while he was admiring it, I charged my gun again, and presently perceived a great fowl like a hawk, perching upon a tree within shot; and therefore, to let *Friday* understand what I was going to do, I called him to me again, pointing at the fowl, which I found to be a parrot. I made him understand that I would shoot and kill that bird; accordingly I fired, and bad him look, when immediately he saw the parrot fall down. Again he stood like one amazed, notwithstanding all I had said to him; and the more confounded he was, because he did not perceive me put any thing into my gun. Undoubtedly, a thing so utterly strange, carrying death along with it, far or near, either to man or beast, must certainly create the greatest astonishment to one who had never heard of such a thing

a thing in his whole life: And really his amazement continued so long, that, had I allowed it, he would have prostrated himself before me and my gun, with the greatest worship and adoration. As for the gun in particular, he would not so much as suffer his fingers to touch it for several days after; but would come and communicate his thoughts to it, and talk to it, as if the senseless piece had understood and answered him: All this I could perceive him do, when he thought my back was turned; the chief intent of which was, to desire it not to kill him, as I afterwards came to understand.

I never strove to prevent his admiration, nor hinder him from those comical gestures he used on such occasions: But when his astonishment was a little over, I made tokens to him to run and fetch the parrot that I had shot, which he accordingly did, staying some time longer than usual, by reason the bird, not being quite dead, had fluttered some way farther from the place where he fell. In the mean time as he was looking for her, I took the advantage of charging my gun again, that I might be ready for another mark that might offer itself; but nothing more occurred at that time. So I brought home the kid, and the same evening took off the skin, and divided the carcase as well as I could. Part of this flesh I stewed, or boiled, in a pot I had for this occasion. And then spreading my table, I sat down, giving my man some to eat too, who was wonderfully pleased, and seemed to like it very well, but what was most surprising to him, was to see me eat salt with it: Upon which he made me to understand, that the salt was very bad for me; when putting a little into his mouth, he seemed to nauseate it in such a manner as to spit and sputter at it, and then washed his mouth with fresh water: But to shew him how contrary his opinion was to mine, I put some meat in my mouth without salt, and feigned to spit and sputter as much for want of it, as he had done at it: Yet all this proved of no signification to *Friday*: And it was a long while before he could endure salt in his meat or broth, and even then, but a very small quantity.

Thus having fed him sufficiently with boiled meat and broth that time, the next day I was resolved to feast him with a roasted piece of the kid. And having no spit to fasten it, nor jack to turn it, I make use of that common artifice, which many of the people of *England* have; that is, to set two poles upon each side of the fire, and one cross on the top, hanging the meat thereon with a string, and so turning round continually, roast it, as we read bloody tyrants have cruelly roasted martyrs. This practice caused great admiration in my man *Friday*, which is another guess way, to what the barbarous savages were accustomed. But when he came to taste the sweetness and tenderness of the flesh, he expressed his entire satisfaction

in above a thousand different ways. And, as I could not but understand his meaning, you may be sure I was wonderfully pleased; especially when he made it also very plain to me, that he would never whilst he lived, eat man's flesh more.

Well, now it was high time I should let my servant to work; and so the next day I put him to beat out some corn, and sift it in the same manner as I had done before. And really the fellow was very quick and handy in the execution of any thing I ordered him to go about. I made him understand that it was to make bread for us to eat, and after let him see me make and bake it: In short, he did every thing as I ordered him, in a little time, as well as I could do it myself.

When I considered, that I had two mouths to feed instead of one, I was necessarily obliged to think, that, in consequence thereof, I must provide more ground for my harvest, and plant a larger quantity of corn than I commonly used to do; upon which I marked out a bigger piece of land, fencing it in the same manner as I had done before; in the execution of which I must give *Friday* this good word, that no man could work more hard or willingly than he did: And when I made him sensible that it was for bread to serve him as well as me, he then very passionately made me understand, that he thought I had much more labour on me on his account alone, than I had for myself; and that no pains or diligence should be wanting in him, if I would but direct him in those works wherein he might succeed.

I must certainly own, that this was the most pleasant year I ever had in the island: For, after some time, *Friday* began to talk pretty well, and understand the names of those things which I was wont to call for, and the places where I used to send him. So that my long silent tongue, which had been useless so many years, except in an exclamatory manner, either for deliverance or blessings, now began to be occupied, in teaching and talking to my man *Friday*; for indeed I had such a singular satisfaction in the fellow himself, so innocent did his simple and unfeigned honesty appear more and more to me every day, that I really began entirely to love the creature: And, for his part, I believe there was no love lost, and that his nature had been more charmed with my exceeding kindness, and his affections more placed upon me, than upon any other object whatsoever among the *Barbarians*. But still I had a great mind to try if he had any hankering inclination to return to his own country again: And by this time, having learned him *English* so well that he could give me tolerable answers to any questions which I demanded, I asked him whether that nation, to which he belonged, never conquered in battle? This question made *Friday* smile, and to which he answered, *yes, yes, we always fight the better*; as much as to say, *they always*

always got the better in fight. Upon which we proceeded on the following discourse. You say, said I, that you always fight the better; why then, *Friday*, how came you to be taken prisoner?

*Friday*. But for all that my nation beat much.

*Master*. How, say you, beat! if your nation beat them, how came you to be taken?

*Friday*. They more many mans than my nation in the place where me was; they take one, two, three, and me: My nation much over beat them in the yonder place, where me no was; there my nation mans beat one, two, three great thousand.

*Master*. Then why did not your men recover you from the hands of your enemies?

*Friday*. They run, one, two, or three, and me; they make all go in the canoo; my nation have no canoo that time.

*Master*. It's very well, *Friday*: But what does your nation do with the prisoners they take? What do they carry them away, and eat them, as these have done?

*Friday*. Yes, yes, my nation eat mans too, eat up all.

*Master*. To what place do they carry them to be devoured?

*Friday*. Go to other nations where they think.

*Master*. Do they bring them hither?

*Friday*. Yes, come over hither, come over other place.

*Master*. And have you been with them here, *Friday*?

*Friday*. Yes, me been here: (pointing to the north west of the island, being the side where they used to land.)

Thus having got what account I could from my man, I plainly understood, that he had been as bad as any of the rest of the cannibals, having been formerly among the savages, who used to come on shore on the farthest part of the island, upon the same bloody occasions as he was brought here for: And some time after I carried him to that place where he pointed; and no sooner did he come there, but he presently knew the ground, signifying to me, that he was once there, when they ate up twenty men, two women, and a young child. But as he could not explain the number in *English*, he did it by so many stones in a row, making a sign to me to count them.

This passage I have the rather mentioned, because it led to things more important and useful for me to know: For after I had this satisfactory discourse with him, my next question was, how far it was from the island to the shore, and whether the canoes were not often lost in the ocean? to which he answered, there was no danger, no canoes ever lost; but that after a little way out to the sea, there was a strong current, and a wind always one way in the afternoon. This I thought at first to be no more than the sets of the tide, of going out, or coming in; but I afterwards understood it was occasioned by the

the great draught and reflux of the mighty river *Oroonoko*, in the mouth or gulph of which I imagined my kingdom lay; and that the land which I perceived to the W. and N. W. must be the great island *Trinidad*, on the north of the river. A thousand questions (if that would satisfy me) did I ask *Friday* about the nature of the country, the sea, the coasts, the inhabitants, and what nations were nearest them: To which questions, the poor fellow declared all he knew, with the greatest openness and utmost sincerity. When I demanded of him the particular names of the various nations of his sort of people, he could only answer me in general that they were called *Caribbee*. Hence it was I considered, that these must be the *Caribbees*, so much taken notice of by our maps to be on that part of *America*, which reaches from the mouth of the river *Oroonoko* to *Guiana*, and so on to *St. Martha*. Then *Friday* proceeded to tell me, that up a great way beyond the moon, as much as to say, beyond the setting of the moon, which must be W. from their country, there dwelt white bearded men, such as I was, pointing to my whiskers, and that they had killed much mans. I was not ignorant with what barbarity the *Spaniards* treated these creatures; so that I presently concluded it must be them, whose cruelties had spread throughout *America*, to be remembered even to succeeding generations.

Well, you may be sure, this knowledge, which the imperfect information of my man had let me to, was very comfortable to me, and made me so curious as to ask him, how I might depart from this island, and get among those white men? he told me, *yes, yes, I might go in two canoes*. In two canoes, thought I, what does my man mean? surely he means one for himself and another for me; and if not, how must two canoes hold me, without being joined, and then put one part of my body in one, and the other part in the other; and indeed it was a long while before I understood his meaning, which was, that it must be a large boat as big as two canoes, able to bear with the waves, and not so liable to be overfet as a small one must have been.

I believe there is no state of life but what may be happy, if people would but endeavour for their part to make it so. He is not the happiest man that has the most riches, but he that is content with what he hath. Before I had my servant I thought myself miserable till I had him; and now I enjoyed the happy benefits of him, I retained the same thoughts for want of a deliverance from a place of retirement, ease and plenty, where providence had sufficiently blessed me: In a word, from this time I entertained some hopes, that one time or other I might find an opportunity to make my escape from this island, and that this poor savage might be a great furtherance thereto.

All the time since my man became so intelligent as to understand and speak to me, I spared no pains or diligence to instruct him, according to my poor share of knowledge, in the principles of religion, and the adoration that he ought to pay to the true God. One time, as I very well remember, I asked him who made him? at first, the innocent creature did not understand what I meant, but rather thought I asked him, who was his father? upon which I took another way to make him sensible, by demanding of him an answer to this question: *Friday*, (said I) who is it that made the sea, this ground whereon we walk, and all these hills and woods which we behold; and here indeed I did not miss of my intencion; for he told me it was one old *Benamuckee*, (the God whom I supposed these savages adored) who lived a great way beyond all. But as for his attributes, poor *Friday* was an utter stranger to them. He could describe nothing of this great person; and all that he could say was, that he was very old, much older than the sea and land, the moon, or the stars. *Friday*, (said I again) if this great and old person has made all things in the world, how comes it to pass, that all things, as me in particular, do not adore and worship him? upon this looking very grave, with a perfect sweet look of innocence, he replied, *master, all things say O to him*, by which it may reasonably be supposed he meant adoration. And where, said I, do the people of your country go when they die? he answered, they all go to *Benamuckee*. What, and those people that are eaten up, do they go there? Said he, *Benamuckee love them dearly; we pray to Benamuckee in de Canoo, and Benamuckee would love me, when dey eat a me all up.*

Such discourses as these had I with my man, and such as made me sensible, that the true God is worshipped, though under imperfect similitudes. And that the false adoration which the heathens give to their imaginary deity, is as great an argument of the divine essence, as the most learned atheists, *falsely so called*, can bring against it: For God will be glorified in his works, let the denomination be what it will; and I cannot be of that opinion which some conceive, that God should decree men to be damned for want of a right notion of faith, in a place where the power of the Almighty has not permitted it to be preached; and therefore cannot but conclude, that since obedience is the best sacrifice, these poor creatures, acting by that light and knowledge which they are possessed of, may undoubtedly obtain a happy salvation, though not that enjoyment with *Christ* as his saints, confessors and martyrs.

But leaving these determinations aside, more fit for the ablest divines than me to discuss, I began to instruct my servant in the saving knowledge of the true Deity; in which, the directions of God's holy spirit assisted me. I lifted up my hands to  
heaven,



heaven, and pointing thereto, told him, that the great Maker of heaven and earth lived there: That as his infinite power fashioned this world out of a confused *chaos*, and made it in that beautiful frame which we behold, so he governs and preserves it, by his undoubted knowledge, sovereign greatness, and peculiar providence: That he was omnipotent, could do every thing for us, give every thing to us, and take every thing away from us: That he was a rewarder and punisher of good and evil actions: That there was nothing but what he knew, no thoughts so secret but he could bring to light: And thus by degrees I opened his eyes, and described to him the manner of the creation of the world, the situation of paradise, the transgressions of our first parents, the wickedness of God's peculiar people, and the universal sins and abominations of the whole earth. When these things were implanted in his mind, I told him that as God's justice was equal to his mercy, he resolved to destroy this world, till his son, *Jesus Christ*, interposed in our behalf, and to procure our redemption, obtained leave of his heavenly Father to come down from heaven into the world, where he took human nature upon him, instructed us in our way to eternal life, and died as a sacrifice for our sins: That he was now ascended into heaven, mediating for our pardon, delivering our petitions, and obtaining all those benefits which we asked in his name, by humble and hearty prayers, which were heard in the throne of heaven. As very frequently I used to inculcate things into his mind, *Friday* one day told me that if our great God could hear us beyond the sun, he must then surely be a greater God than their *Benamuckee*, who lived but a little way, and yet could not hear them, till they ascended the great mountains, where he dwells, to speak to him. What, said I, *Friday*, did you go thither to speak to him too? he answered, no, they never went that were young men; none but old men, called their *Oozookakee*, meaning the *Indian* priests, who went to say O, (so he called saying their prayers) and they returned back, and told them what *Benamuckee* said. From hence I could not but observe how happy we Christians are, who have God's immediate revelation for our certain guide; and that our faith is neither misled, nor our reason imposed upon, by any set of men resembling these *Indian* impostors.

But to clear up this palpable cheat, to my man *Friday*, I told him, that the pretence of their ancient men going up to the mountains to say O to their god *Benamuckee*, was an impostor: And that their bringing back an answer was all a sham, if not worse; for if there was any such thing spoken to them sometimes, it must proceed from an internal spirit. And here I thought it necessary to enter into a long discourse with him, which I did after this manner:

*Fridzy*, (said I) you must know, that before this world was made, there was one Almighty Power, existent before the beginning, by whose power all things were made, and whose majesty shall have no end. To be glorified and adored by beings of a heavenly nature, he created angels and archangels, that is, glorious spirits resembling himself, to encompass round his throne, eternally singing forth his praise in the most heavenly sounds and divine harmony. And among this heavenly choir, *Lucifer* bore a great sway, as being then one of the particular favourites of these celestial abodes: But he, contrary to that duty he owed his heavenly sovereign, with unbounded ingratitude to his divine creator, not only envied him that adoration which was his due, but thought to usurp that throne, which he had neither power to keep, nor title to pretend to. He raised a dissention and civil war in heaven, and had a number of angels to take his part. Unbounded folly; stupendous pride; thus to hope for victory, and aspire above his powerful Creator! the Deity, not fearful of such an enemy, yet justly provoked at this rebellion, commissions his archangel *St. Michael* to lead forth the heavenly host, and give him battle; the advantage of which was quickly perceived, by *Satan's* being overthrown; and the prince of the air, (for so the Devil was called) with all his fallen angels, driven headlong into a dismal place, which is called hell.

The recital of this truth made my man give the greatest attention, and he expressed a great satisfaction, by his gestures, that God had sent the devil into the deep hole. And then I desired him to give great heed to what I had further to say.

No sooner (proceeded I) was God freed from, and the heavens clear of this arch traitor, but the Father speaks to the Son and Holy Spirit, who belonged to his essence, yet equal to him in power and glory, *Let us make man* (said he) *in our own image, after our own likeness*, Gen. 1. 26. to have dominion over the creatures in the world which we have created. And these, he intended should glorify him in heaven, according to their obedience in this state of probation on earth, which was as it were to be the school to train them up for those heavenly mansions. Now Satan, seeing himself foiled, yet that God had not taken the power from him, as prince of the air, which power heaven designed he should retain, whereby his creatures might be tried. In revenge of the disgrace he had received, he tempts *Adam's* wife, *Eve*, to taste of the tree of knowledge of good and evil, which God had forbidden. He appears to her in the shape of a serpent, being then a most beautiful creature, and tells her, that it was no better than an imposition which God had put upon her and her husband, not to eat of that fair fruit which he had created; that the taste thereof would make them immortal, like God himself; and consequently as great  
and

and powerful as he. Upon which, she not only ate thereof herself, but made her husband eat also, which brought them both under the heavenly displeasure.

Here *Friday* expressed a great concern: *Ab! poor mans!* (cried he) *naughty Womans! naughty Devil! make God not love de mans, make man like Devil himself.*

*Friday*, said I, God still loves mankind; and though the Evil tempted human nature so far, he would not suffer him to have absolute power over them. I have told you before of his tender love to his people, till they, like *Lucifer*, disobeyed his commands and rebelled against him; and that even then, how Jesus Christ his only son came to save sinners. But still every man that lives in the world, is under temptation and trial. The Devil has yet a power, as prince of the air, to suggest evil cogitations in our minds, and prompt us on to wicked actions, that he might glory in our destruction. Whatever evil thoughts we have, proceeded from him. So that God, in this our distress, expects that we should apply ourselves to him by fervent prayer for our speedy redress: He is not like *Benamuckee*, to let none come near him but *Oowokakee*; but suffers the people as well as priests, to offer themselves at his feet, thereby to be delivered from the power and temptation of the Devil.

But though at first, my man *Friday* expressed some concern at the wickedness of *Lucifer*, I found it not so easy to imprint the right notions of him in his mind, as it was about the divine essence of God: For there nature assisted me in all my arguments to shew to him plainly the necessity of a great first cause, and overruling governing power, a secret directing providence, and of the equity and reasonableness of paying adoration to our Creator: Whereas there appeared nothing of all this in the notion of an evil spirit, of his first beginning, his nature, and above all, of his inclination to evil actions, and his power to tempt us on to the like. And indeed this unlearned *Indian*, by the mere force of nature, puzzled me with one particular question, contrary to whatever I had expected from him.

I had, it seems, one day, been talking to him of the omnipotent power of God, and his infinite abhorrence of sin, inasmuch that the scriptures stiled him a *consuming fire* to all sinful workers of iniquity; and that it was in his power, whenever he pleased, to destroy all the world in a moment, the greater part of which are continually offending him.

When, with a serious attention, he had listened a great while to what I said, after I had been telling him, how the Devil was God's enemy in the hearts of men, and used all his malice and skill to defeat the good designs of Providence, and to destroy the kingdom of *Christ* in the world, and so forth: Very well,

well, master (said *Friday*) you say, God is so strong, so great, is he not much stronger, much mightier than the haughty Devil? to be sure, *Friday*, said I, God is more wise, and stronger than the serpent: He is above the Devil, which make us pray to him, that he would tread down Satan under our feet, enable us to resist his violent temptations, and quench his fiery darts. *Why then answered Friday*, quickly, if God, as you say, has much strong, much might as the Devil, why God no kill Devil, make no more tempt, no more do wicked.

You may be certain I was strangely surpris'd at this question of my man's; and though an old man, I was but a young doctor, and consequently very ill qualified for a casuist or a resolver of intricate doubts in religion. And as it is required some time for me to study for an answer, I pretended not to hear him, nor to ask him what he said: But too earnest was he for an answer, to forget his question, which he repeated in the very same broken words as above. When I had recovered myself a little, *Friday* (said I) God will at last punish him severely, being reserved for judgment, and is to be cast into the bottomless pit to remain in fire everlasting. But all this did not satisfy *Friday*, for returning upon me, he repeated my words, reserve at last, me no understand; but why not kill Devil now, not kill Devil, great, great while ago? *Friday*, said, you may as well ask me why God does not kill you and I, when by our wicked actions, we so much offend his divine majesty? he gives us time to repent of our sins, that thereby we may obtain pardon. At these words, obtain pardon, *Friday* mused a great while, and at last, looking me stedfastly in the face: Well, well, said he, that's very well; so you, I, Devil, all wicked mans, all preserve, repent, God pardon all.

Indeed here I was run down to the last extremity, when it became very evident to me, how mere natural notions will guide reasonable creatures to the knowledge of a deity, and to the homage due to the supreme being of God; but however, nothing but divine revelation can form the knowledge of *Jesus Christ*, and a redemption purchased for us, of a mediator of the new covenant, and of an intercessor at the footstool of God's throne; and therefore the Gospel of our Lord and Saviour *Jesus Christ*, that is, the word and spirit of God, promised for the guide and sanctifier of people, are the most necessary instructors of the souls of men in the saving knowledge of the Almighty, and the means to attain eternal happiness.

And now I found it necessary to put an end to the discourse between my man and me, for which purpose I rose up hastily, and made as if I had some occasion to go out, sending *Friday* for something that was a good way off. I then fell on my knees, and beseeched God that he would inspire me so far, as to guide this poor savage in the knowledge of *Christ*, to answer his

his questions more clearly, that his conscience might be convinced, his eyes opened and his soul saved. When he returned again, I entered into a very long discourse with him, upon the subject of the world's redemption by the Saviour of the world, and the doctrine of repentance preached from Heaven, together with an holy faith in our blessed redeemer *Jesus Christ*: And then I proceeded to explain to him, according to my weak capacity, the reason why our Saviour took not on him the nature of Angels, but rather the seed of *Abraham*; and how upon that account the fallen Angels had no benefit by the redemption; and lastly, that he came only to the lost sheep of the house of *Israel*, and the like. God knows, I had more sincerity than knowledge in all the ways I took for this poor *Indian's* instruction; and I must acknowledge, that I believe every body that acts upon the same principle will find, that in laying heavenly truths open before him, in many things, I informed and instructed myself, that either I did not know, or had not perfectly considered of before? But as I searched into them for the information of this poor savage, so they naturally occurred to my mind; and my enquiry after many things was more affectionate than ever I felt in my life: so that however this poor creature might be improved by my instruction, certain it is, that upon this account I had great reason to bless kind providence for sending him to me. His company allayed my grief, and made my habitation more comfortable: And when I reflected that this solitary life, to which I had been so long confined, had not only moved me to look towards Heaven, but made me the instrument, under providence to save the life, and, for aught I knew, the soul of a poor savage, by bringing him to the knowledge of *Jesus Christ*; this caused a secret joy to spread through every part of my soul, and I frequently rejoiced that ever I was brought to this place, which I once thought to be the most miserable part of the world.

All the remainder of my time did I continue in this thankful frame of mind, and for three years did my man and I live in the greatest enjoyment and happiness, by our conversation one with another, as much as I could expect or desire. And indeed I believe the savage was as good a christian as I; though I hope we were equally penitent; and such penitents that were comforted and restored by God's holy spirit: for now we had the word of the Lord to instruct us in the right way, and we were no farther off the assistance of the Holy Ghost, than if we had been on the *English* shore.

By the constant applications I made of the scriptures, as I read them to my man *Friday*, I earnestly endeavoured to make him understand every part of it, as much as lay in my power. He also on the other hand, by his very serious questions and enquiries,

enquiries, made me a much better proficient in scripture knowledge than I should have been by my own private reading and study. I must not omit another thing proceeding from the experience I had in my retirement; it was, that infinite and inexpressible blessing, the knowledge of God through *Christ Jesus*, which was so plain and easy to be understood, as immediately to direct me to carry on the great work of sincere repentance for my sins, and laying hold of a Saviour for eternal life, to a practical stated reformation, and obedience to all God's institutions, without the assistance of a reverend and orthodox divine; and especially by this same instruction, so to enlighten this savage creature, as to make him such a good Christian as very few could exceed him, and there was only this great thing wanting, that I had no authority to administer the holy sacrament, that heavenly participation of Christ's body and blood; yet however we rested ourselves content that God would accept our desires, and, according to our faith, have mercy on us.

But what we wanted one way, was made up in another, and that was universal peace in our little church. We had no disputes or wranglings about the nature of equality of the holy, blessed, and undivided Trinity; no niceties in doctrine, or schemes of church government; no sour and morose dissenters to impose more sublimated notions upon us, nor pedantic sophisters, to confound us with unintelligible mysteries; but instead of all this, we enjoyed the most certain guide to heaven; that is, the Word of God, besides which we had the comfortable views of His Spirit leading us unto the truth, and making us both willing and obedient to the instruction of His word. And as the knowledge and practice of which are the principal means of salvation, I cannot see what it can avail any Christian church or man in the world, to amuse themselves with every indifferent speculation and opinion, except those who have a mind to display their particular vanity and affectation.

You may well suppose that, by these common discourses we had together, my man and I became most intimately acquainted, and that there was but very little that I could say, but *Friday* understood, speaking very fluently, though indeed it was but broken English. And really I now took a particular pleasure in relating all my adventures, especially those that occurred since my being cast on this island. I made him understand the wonderful mystery, as he conceived of gunpowder and bullet, and taught him how to shoot: I also presented him a knife, which pleased him exceedingly; making him a belt with a frog hanging thereto, like those in which we wear hangers in England; and instead of a hanger to put in that frog, I gave him a hatchet which was not only as good, but a  
more

more excellent weapon upon any other occasion. In a word, my man thus accoutred, looked upon himself as great as *Don Quixote*, when that celebrated champion went to combat the wind mill.

After all this, I gave him a very particular description of the territories of *Europe*, and in a particular manner of *Old England*, the place of my nativity. I laid before him the manner of our worshipping God, our behaviour to one another, and how we traded in ships to every part of the universe. I then told him my misfortunes in being shipwrecked, showing him, as near as I could, the place where the ship lay, which had been gone long before. I brought him to the ruins of our boats, which, before, my whole strength could not move, but now was almost rotten and fallen to pieces. I observed my man *Friday* to view this boat with an uncommon curiosity, which when he had done, he stood pondering a great while and said nothing. At last, said I, *Friday* what makes you ponder so much? he replied, *O Master, me see like boat come to place at my nation.*

I was some time indeed before I understood what my man meant; but examining farther into it, I plainly found such another boat resembling that, had come to the country where he dwelt; as much as to say, by his farther explanation, that the boat was driven there through violent storms and fires of weather. It presently came into my mind, that some *European* ship having been cast away, the poor distressed creatures were forced to have recourse to the boat to save their lives; and being all, as I thought, drowned, I never concerned myself to ask any thing about them, but my only enquiry was about the boat, and what description my man could give of it.

Indeed *Friday* answered my demands very well, making every thing very plain to my understanding; but especially I was satisfied when he told me, with a great warmth and ardour, *O Master, me save white man from drown*: Upon which I immediately asked him, if there were any *white mans*, as he called them, in the boat? *yes yes*, said he, *the boat full, very full, white mans*. How many, *Friday*? said I. Hereupon he numbered his fingers and counted seventeen. And when I asked him what became of them all, and whether they lived or not? he replied, *yes Master, they all live, they be live 'mong my nation*. This plain information put new thoughts into my head, that these must be those very men, which before I concluded had been swallowed up in the ocean after they had left their ship, that had struck upon the rocks of my kingdom; and after escaping the fury of the deep, landed upon the wild shore, and committed themselves to the fury of those devouring *Indians*,

The manner of their cruelties to one another, which consequently, as I thought, must be acted with greater barbarity to strangers, created a great admiration within me, and made me still more curious to ask *Friday* concerning them: He told me, he was sure they lived still there, having resided among them above four years, and the savages gave them victuals to live upon. But pray, *Friday*, said I, whence proceeded all this good nature and generosity? How came it to pass that they did not kill and eat them to please their devouring appetites, and occasion so splendid an entertainment among them? *No no*, said *Friday*, *they not kill 'em they make brother with 'em*; by which I understood there was a truce between them. And then I had a more favourable opinion of the *Indians*, upon *Friday's* uttering these words; *my nation, i' other nation, no eat mans, but when mans make war fight*; as though he had said, that neither those of his kingdom, nor any other nation that he knew of, ever eat their fellow creatures, but such whom their law of arms allowed to be devoured; and they were those miserable captives, whose great misfortune it should be to be made prisoners of war.

Some considerable time after, upon a very pleasant day, in most serene weather, my man and I stood upon the top of a hill, on the east side of the island, whence I had once before beheld the continent of *America*. I could not tell immediately what was the matter, for suddenly *Friday* fell a jumping and dancing as if he had been mad; and upon my demanding the reason of his behaviour, *O joy!* said he, *O glad!* *Thers see my country, there my nation, there live white mans all geither*. And indeed such a rapturous sense of pleasure appeared in his countenance, that his eyes had an uncommon sparkling and brightness, and such a strange eagerness, as if he had a longing desire to be in his own country again; and this new observation which I had, made me not so well satisfied with my man *Friday* as before: for, by this appearance, I made no dispute, but that if he could get back thither again, he would not only be unmindful of what religion I had taught him, but likewise of the great obligation that he owed me for his wonderful deliverance: nay that he would not only inform his countrymen of me, but accompany hundreds of them to my kingdom, and make me a miserable sacrifice like those unhappy wretches taken in battle.

Indeed I was very much to blame to have these cruel and unjust suspicions, and must freely own I wronged the poor creature very much, who was quite of a contrary temper; and had he had that discerning acuteness which many *Europeans* have, he would have perceived my coldness and indifference, and also have been very much concerned upon this account: For as I was now more circumspect, I had much lessened my kindness



ness and familiarity with him : And while this jealousy continued, I used that artful way (now too much in fashion to occasion strife and dissention) of pumping him daily, thereby to discover whether he was deceitful in his thoughts and inclinations : But certainly he had nothing in him but what was consistent with the best principles, both as a religious christian and grateful friend ; and indeed I found every thing he said was so ingenuous and innocent, that I had no room for suspicion, and, in spite of all uneasiness, he not only made me entirely his own again, but also caused me much to lament that I ever conceived one ill thought of him.

As we were walking up the same hill another day, when the weather being so hazy at sea that I could not perceive the continent, *Friday*, said I, don't you wish yourself to be in your own country, your own nation, among your old friends and acquaintance ? *Yes*, said he, *me much O glad to be at my own nation*. And what would you do there, *Friday* ? said I, would you turn wild again, eat man's flesh, and be a savage as you was formerly ? *No no*, (answered he, full of concern, and shaking his head) *Friday now tell them to live good, tell them to pray God, tell them to eat corn bread, cattle flesh, milk, no eat man again*. But surely replied I, if you should offer to do all this, they will kill you, and to manifest their contempt of such instruction, may eat you up when they have done. He then put on a grave, yet innocent and smooth countenance, saying, *no, they no kill me, they willing tove learn* ; that is, that they would be very willing to learn ; adding withal, *that they had learn much of the bearded mans that come in the boat*. Will you go back again *Friday* ? said I. He smiled at that, and told me that he could not swim so far. But, said I, I will make a canoe for you. *Yes Master*, said he, *me go if you go ; me no go if you stay*. I go, *Friday* ! said I, why would you have them eat me up, and devour your kind master ? *No no*, said he, *me make they no eat master, me make they much love you* ; that is, he would tell them how I had slain his enemies, and thereby saved his life, for which reason he would make them love me : And then he related to me, as well as he was able, how exceeding kind those of his nation were to the white, or bearded men as he called them, who in their great calamity, were driven into their country.

It was from this time, indeed, I had strong inclinations to venture over, and use my utmost efforts, if possible, to join these white bearded men, who undoubtedly were *Spaniards* or *Portuguese* : For (thought I) it must be certainly a better and safer way to escape when there is a good company, than for me alone, from an island forty miles off the shore, and without any assistance. Some days after, *Friday* and I being at work as usual, at the same time diverting ourselves with various discourses,

courses, I told him I had a boat which I would bestow upon him, whenever he pleased to return to his own nation : And to convince him of the truth of what I said, I took him with me to the other side of the island where my frigate lay, and then taking it from under the water (for I always kept it sunk for fear of a discovery) we both went into it, to see how it would manage such an expedition.

Really never could any be more dexterous in rowing than my faithful servant, making the boat go as fast again as I could. Well now, *Friday*, (said I) shall we go to your so much admired nation ? But instead of meeting with that cheerfulness I expected, he looked very dull and melancholy at my saying so ; which indeed at first surprized me, till he made me sensible that his concern was about the boat's being too small to go so far a voyage. Upon which I let him understand I had a much bigger ; and accordingly the next day, went to the place where the first boat lay which I had made, when all the strength I had, or art could use, failed me in my attempt to get into the water ; but now, it having lain in the sun two and twenty years, and no care being taken of it all that while, it became in a manner rotten. My man told me, that such a boat would do very well for the purpose ; sufficient to carry enough *wittle, drink, bread*, for that was his manner of talking. In short, my mind being strongly fixed upon my design of going over with him to the continent, I very plainly told him that we would both go, and make a boat full as big, and more proportionable than that, where he might safely return to his own nation.

These words I observed made *Friday* look so very pensive, that I thought he would have fallen at my feet. It was sometime before he would speak a word, which made me ask him what was the matter with him ? He replied, in a very soft and moving tone, *what has poor Friday done ? Why are you angry mad with poor servant ? What me done, O what me done ? Friday*, said I, you never yet have offended me, what makes you think I am angry with you, when I am not angry at all ? *You no angry, no angry* said he several times, *if you be no angry, why den send Friday over great water to my own nation ?* Why surely, *Friday*, answered I, did not you wish to be there, when from a mountain you beheld the place where you was born ; and is it not to satisfy your desires that I am willing to give you leave to return thither ? *Yes yes*, said *Friday*, *me wish be there sure nough, but me den wish master there too ; no wish Friday there, no master there.* In short, he could not endure the thoughts of going there without me. I go there, *Friday* ! said I, what shall I do there ?—He answered, very quickly, *O master, you do great deal much good, you teach all de wild mans to be good tame mans, you learn them to be sober, live good life, to know*

*God, and pray God.* Alas! poor *Friday*, said I, what can I do against their Priests of *Benamuckee*, or indeed, what good can I make your nation sensible of, when I myself am but a poor ignorant man? *No no, master*, said he, *you be no ignorant, you teach me good, you teach them good.* You shall go without me *Friday*, said I, for I don't care to accompany you thither. I would rather live in this solitude, than to venture among such inhuman savages. Go your way, since you desire it, and leave me alone by myself, as I was before I saved your life.

Never was any creature more thunder struck than *Friday* was at these words, *Go me away, leave master away!* said he, after a long silence. *No no, Friday die, Friday no live master gone!* as though he had said, I neither can nor will live if my master sends me from him. And here I cannot but take notice of the strong ties of friendship, which many times surpass those of consanguinity: For often we find a great disagreement among kindred; and when there is any seeming regard for each other, 'tis very seldom true, and scarce ever lasting, if powerful interest does not bear the sway; and that alone is often the occasion of the greatest hatred in the world; which is to desire the death of parents and relations, for the sake of enjoying their fortunes: But here was no such thing between my servant and me; instead of which, there was nothing but gratitude, and the sincerest love: He found me not only his deliverer, but his preserver and comforter: Not a severe and cruel tyrant, but a kind, loving, and affable friend. He wanted for no manner of sustenance; and when he was ill, or out of order, I was his physician, not only for his body, but his soul; and therefore it was no wonder that such an innocent creature, long since divested of his former natural cruelty, should have an uncommon concern at so cruel a separation from me, which pierced him to the very soul, and made him desire even to die rather than live without me.

After I had told *Friday*, in a very careless manner, that he should be at his liberty as soon as the boat was made, the language of his eyes expressed all imaginable confusion, when immediately running to one of his hatchets which he used to wear as a most defensive weapon, he gives it into my hand, with a heart so full that he could scarce speak. *Friday*, said I, what is it you mean? What must I do with this? *Only kill Friday*, said he, *Friday no care live long.* But what must I kill you for, replied I again. *Ab! dear Master, what make you Friday save from eat a me up, so keep long Friday, make Friday love God, and not love Benamuckee; and now Friday send away, never see Friday more!* As though the poor creature had said, Alas! my dearest, kindest Master, how comes it to pass that after having ventured your precious life to save me from the jaws of devouring cannibals, like myself; after such a tender regard

to provide for me such comfortable nourishment, and continuing so long a kind master, and most sincere friend; and after making me forsake the false notion of an *Indian* deity, and worship the true God, in spirit and in truth: after all this I say, how comes it now, that you are willing to send me away to my former course of living, by which means undoubtedly we shall be dead to each other; but greater must be my misfortune, that I shall never behold the best friend I have in this world any more! And this certainly, though he could not express himself so fully, must be his sentiments; for the tears ran down his cheeks in such a plentiful manner, that I had much ado to refrain from weeping also, when I beheld the poor creature's affection: So that I was forced to comfort him in the best manner, which I did by telling him, if he was content to abide with me, I should be ever willing to keep him.

After *Friday's* grief was something abated, more fully to convince me of his affection, he said *O master, me not care be in my nation, leave you here; me desire my nation learn good, that all;* meaning that his desire was for the conversion of that barbarous people. But as I had no apostolic mission, nor any concern about their salvation; so I had neither the least intention or desire of undertaking it; and the strength of my inclination, in order to escape, proceeded chiefly from my late discourse with *Friday* about those seventeen white bearded men, that had been driven upon the barbarian coast, whom I designed to join with, as a surer means to further our escape. To which intent my man and I went to search for a proper tree to fell, whereof we might make a large periagua, or canoe, to undertake the voyage: And indeed we needed not be long in finding one fit for our purpose, there being wood enough in the island to have built a fleet of large vessels; but the thing we principally wanted was, to get one so near the water, that we might launch it after it was finished, and not commit so horrid a mistake as I had done once, many years before.

Well, after a great search for what was best and most convenient, *Friday* at last, whose judgment in such affairs was much superior to mine, pitched upon a kind of wood the most fitting for it. To this day I cannot tell the name of the tree I cut it from, nor describe it any other way, than only by saying, that it is very like what we call fustic, or betwixt that and the Nicaragua wood, being much of the same colour and smell. But though my man exceeded me in the knowledge of the most proper tree, yet I showed him a much better and cleaner way to make a canoe than ever he knew before: For he was for burning the hollow or cavity of the tree, in order to make this boat; but I then told him how we might do it with tools, learning him at the same time how to use them, which indeed he did very dexterously; so that in a month's labour, we finished

shel it, making it very handsome, by cutting the outside into the true shape of a boat. After this it took us full a fortnight before we could get her into the water, which we did as it were, inch by inch, upon great rollers : But when she was in, she would have carried twenty men with all the ease imaginable.

As I was very well pleased, you may be sure, at the launching of this man of war of mine, I was no less amazed to behold with what dexterity my man would manage her, turn her, and paddle her along. Well, *Friday* said I, what do you think of it now? Do you think this will carry us over? *Yes Master*, said he, *we venture over well, though great blow wind*. But my design was yet farther, which he was insensible of, and that was to make a mast and sail, and to provide her with an anchor and cable. As for a mast, that was no difficult thing at all to procure ; so I fixed upon a strait young cedar tree, which I found near the place, there abounding great plenty of it in the island ; and setting *Friday* to cut it down, I gave him particular directions how to shape and order it ; but as to the sail, that belonged to me only. I very well knew I had some old ones, or pieces of sails, enough, which had lain six and twenty years by me ; but not being careful to preserve them, as thinking I should have no occasion to use them any more ; when I came to look over them, I found them almost all rotten, except two ; and with these I went to work, and after a great deal of pains, and awkward tedious working, for want of needles, I finished at length a three corner'd ugly thing, like what we call in *England* a shoulder of mutton sail, to go with a boom at bottom, and a little small sprit at the top, like those which our long boats use, and which I very well knew how to manage ; especially since it was like that which I had in my patron's fishing boat, when, with my boy *Xury*, I made my escape from the *Barbary* shore.

It was near two months, I think, before I completed this work, that is, the rigging and fitting my mast and sails ; and indeed they were nicely done, having made a small stay, and a sail or foresail to it, to assist, it we should turn to the westward ; and, which was still more, I fixed a rudder to the stern of her, to steer with ; and though I was but a very indifferent shipwright, yet, as I was sensible of the great usefulness and absolute necessity of a thing like this, I applied myself to it with such constant application, that at last I accomplished my design : But what with the many dull contrivances I had about it, and the failure of many things, it cost me as much pains in ordering, as in making the boat. Besides, when all this was done, I had my man *Friday* to teach what belonged to its navigation : For though he very well understood how to paddle a canoe along, yet he was an utter stranger to a sail and a rudder, and

was amazed when he saw me work the boat to and again in the sea by the same, and how the sail gibbed and filled, this way, or that way, as the course we sailed changed. After some time, and a little use, I made all these things very familiar to him, so that he became an expert sailor, except in relation to the compass; and that I could make him understand but very little of. But as it happened there was seldom occasion for it, there being but little cloudy weather, and scarce ever any fog in those parts; the stars were always visible in the night, and the shore perspicuous by day, except in the rainy season, which confined every one around them to their habitations.

Thus entered in the seven and twentieth year of my reign, or captivity, which you please, (the last three of which blessed with the company of my man *Friday*, ought not to be reckoned) I kept the anniversary of my landing here, with the same thankfulness to God, for his tender mercies, as I did before; and certainly, as I had a great cause for a thankful acknowledgement for my deliverance at first, I had much greater now, for such singular and additional testimonies of the care of Providence over me, in all my distresses, both of body and mind, and the great hopes I had of being effectually and speedily delivered; for I had a strong impression upon my mind, that I should not be another year in this island: But however, I still continued on with my husbandry; digging, planting and fencing as usual: Gathering and curing my grapes, and doing all other things that were necessary for me.

And now the rainy season beginning to come upon me, obliged me to keep the longer within doors; but before this I brought my new vessel into the creek, where I had landed my rafts from the ship, and hauling her up to the shore, I ordered my man *Friday* to dig a dock sufficient to hold her in, and deep enough to give her water, wherein she might float; and then when the tide was out, we made a strong dam across the end of it, to keep up the water; by which means she lay dry, as to the tide from the sea; and to keep the rain from her, we thatched her over, as it were, with boughs of trees, like a house; and so waited for the months of *November* and *December*, in which I designed to venture over the ocean.

No sooner did the seasonable weather begin to draw near, but so much was I elevated by this new designed adventure, that I daily prepared for the voyage. The first thing I thought of was, to lay by a certain quantity of provisions, as a sufficient store for such an expedition, intending in a week or fortnight's time to open the dock and launch out the boat for that purpose. But one morning, as I was very busy upon something necessary for this occasion, I called *Friday* to me, and bid him go to the sea shore, and see if he could find a turtle or tortoise, a thing which we commonly had once a week, as much upon  
account

account of the eggs, as for sake of the the flesh. He had not long been gone, but he came running back, as though he was pursued for life, and, as it were, flew over my outward wall or fence, like one that felt not the ground, or steps he let his feet on; and before I had time to enquire the reason of his precipitation, he cries out, *O Master! O dear Master! O sorrow, sorrow! bad! O bad!* Why, what's the matter, *Friday?* said I. *O yonder, yonder,* said he, *there be one, two three canoes! two, three!* surely (thought I) there must be six by my man's way of reckoning; but on a stricter enquiry, I found there was but three. Well, *Friday,* said I, don't be terrified, I warrant you we will not only defend ourselves against them, but kill the most of those cruel savages. But though I comforted him in the best manner I could, the poor creature trembled so, that I scarce knew what to do with him: *O Master,* says he, *they come look Friday, cut pieces Friday eat a me up.* Why, *Friday,* said I, they will eat me up as well as you, and my danger is as great as yours: But since it is so, we must resolve to fight for our lives: What say you? can you fight, *Friday?* Yes, said he very faintly, *me shoot, me kill what I can, but there come great many number.* That's no matter, said I again, our guns will terrify those that we do not kill: I am very willing to stand by you till the last drop of my blood; now tell me, if you will do the like by me, and obey my orders in whatsoever I command? *Friday* then answered, *O Master, me lose life for you, me die when you bid die.* Thus concluding all questions concerning his fidelity, immediately I fetched a good dram of rum, (of which I had been a very good husband) and gave it him to comfort his heart. After he had drank it, I ordered him to take the two fowling pieces, which we always carried, and load them with large swan shot as big as small pistol bullets; then I took four muskets, and loaded them with two slugs, and five small bullets each, charging my two pistols each with a brace. I hung my great sword, as customary, naked to my side, and gave *Friday* his hatchet, as a most certain weapon of defence.

Thus prepared, I thought, as well as any Knight errant that ever handled a sword and spear, I took my perspective glass, and went up the side of the hill, to see what I could discover; and I perceived very soon, by my glass, that there was one and twenty savages, three prisoners, and three canoes; and that their chief concern seemed to be the triumphant banquet upon the three poor human bodies, a thing which by this time I had observed was very common with them. From hence I also remarked, that they did not land at that place from whence *Friday* made his escape, but nearer to the creek where the shore was low, and where a thick wood came very close to the sea. And then it was my soul was filled with indig-

nation and abhorrence of such inhuman wretches, that put a period to all my former thoughts in their vindication; neither would I give myself time to consider their right of conquest, as I had done before. But descending from the mountain, I came down to *Friday*, and told him, I was resolved to go speedily to them and kill them all; asking him again, in the same breath, if he would stand by me? When by this time being recovered from his fright, and his spirits much cheered with the dram I had given him, he was very pleasant, yet seriously telling me, as he did before, 'when I bid die, he would die.'

And now it was, that having fixed my resolution in so strong a manner, that nothing could divest my breast from its uncommon fury, I immediately divided the arms already charged between us. To my man *Friday* I gave a pistol to stick in his girdle, with three guns upon his shoulder, a weight too great I confess to bear; but what must a poor king do, who had but one soldier in the world? But to shew I made him bear no more than what I would lay on myself, I stuck the other pistol in my girdle, and the three guns upon my shoulders, nay something more, but that was like *Æsop's* burthen, a small bottle of rum, which soon was lightened to our exceeding refreshment. Thus we marched out, under a ponderous load of armour, yet, like two invincible champions, with a quantity of powder and bullets to stand our battle, when the pieces were discharged. And now my orders being to be obeyed, I charged *Friday* to keep close behind me, and not to stir, or shoot, or attempt any thing till I commanded him, and, in the interim, not to speak so much as one word. It was in this order I fetched a compass to my right hand, of near a mile, as well to get over the creek as to attain the wood; and by this I thought to come within shot of them before I could be discerned; as I found by my glass, was no difficult thing to accomplish.

But how fickle and wavering is the mind of man, even in our greatest fury, and strongest inclination; for while I was taking this march, my resolutions began to abate, not through fear of their numbers, who were a parcel of naked unarmed wretches; but these reflections occurred to my thoughts, as what power was I commissioned with, or what occasion or necessity had I to go and imbrue my hands in human blood, and murder people who had neither done, nor intended to do me any wrong? They were innocent in particular as to me; and their barbarous custom was not only their misfortune, but a sign that God had left them in the most immense stupidity; but yet did not appoint me to be a judge of their actions, much less an executioner of his righteous judgments; that on the contrary, whenever he thought fit, he would take vengeance on them himself, and punish them in a national way, according to their national crimes; but this was nothing at all to me, who

had



had no concerns with them. Indeed my man *Friday* might justify himself, because they were his declared enemies, of that very same nation that went to sacrifice him before; and indeed it was lawful for him to attack them, which I could not say was so in respect to me. So warmly did these things press upon my thoughts all the way I went, that I only resolved to place myself so, as to behold their bloody entertainment, without falling upon them, except something, more than ordinary, by God's special direction, should oblige me thereto.

Thus fixed in my resolution, I entered into the thick wood (my man *Friday* following me close behind) when, with all possible wariness and silence, I marched till I came to the skirt of it, on that side which was the nearest to them; for only that one end of the wood interposed between me and them. Upon which I called very softly to *Friday*, and shewed him a great tree, that was just at the corner of the wood, I ordered him to repair thither, and bring me word, if he could plainly perceive their actions: Accordingly, he did as I commanded him, and came back with this melancholy story, that they were all about their fire, eating the flesh of one of their prisoners; and that another lay bound upon the sand, a little distant from them, which they designed to be their next sacrifice; and this, he told me, was not one of their nation, but one of those very bearded men, who was driven by a storm into their country, and whom he had so often talked to me about. You may be sure, that upon hearing this, my soul was ready to sink within me; when ascending up into a tree, I saw plainly by my glass, a white man, who lay upon the beach of the sea, with his hands and feet tied with flags, or things resembling rushes, being covered with clothes, and seemed to be a *European*. From the tree where I took this prospect, I perceived another tree, and a thicket beyond it, about fifty yards nearer to them, than where I was, which, by taking a small circle round, I might come at undiscovered, and then I should be within half a shot of these devourers. And this consideration alone, to be more perfectly revenged upon them made me withhold my passion, though I was enraged to the highest degree imaginable, when going back about twenty paces, I got behind some bushes, which held all the way till I came to the other tree; and then I ascended a little rising ground, not above eighteen yards distance from us, and there I had a full view of these creatures, and I could perceive all their actions.

Such a sight did then appear, as obliged me not to lose a moment's time. There were no less than nineteen of these dreadful wretches seated upon the ground, close huddled together, expressing all the delight imaginable at so barbarous an entertainment; and they had just sent the other two to murder this poor unhappy christian, and bring him perhaps  
limb

limb by limb to their fire; for they were just then going to untie the bands from his feet, in order for death, as fetters are knocked off from the feet of malefactors before they go to the place of execution. Hereupon immediately turning to my man, now, *Friday*, said I, mind what I say, fail in nothing, but do exactly as you see me do. All which he promising he would perform, I set down one of my muskets and the fowling piece upon the ground, and *Friday* did the same by his; and with the other musket I took my aim at the savages, bidding him do the like; are you ready? said I, Yes, Master, said he. Why then fire at them, said I; and that very moment I gave fire likewise.

For my part, I killed one and wounded two; but my man *Friday* taking his aim much better than I, killed two and wounded three more. You may be sure they were in a dreadful consternation, at such an unexpected disaster; and those who yet had escaped our penetrating shot, immediately jumped upon their feet, but were in such confusion, that they knew not which way to run or look, not knowing from whence their destruction came. We then threw down our pieces and took up others, giving a second dreadful volley; but as they were loaded only with swan shot, or small pistol bullets, we perceived only two of them fall; but so many were wounded, that they ran yelling and screaming about like mad creatures. Now, *Friday*, said I, lay down your piece, and take up the musket, and follow me. He did so with great courage, when shewing ourselves to the savages, we gave a great shout, and made directly to the poor victim, who would have been sacrificed, had not our first fire obliged their butchers with three others, to jump into a canoe. By my order, *Friday* fired at them, at which shot I thought he killed them all, by reason of their falling to the bottom of the boat; however he killed two, and mortally wounded a third. In the mean time I cut the flags that tied the hands and feet of the poor creature, and lifting him up asked him in the *Portuguese* tongue, *What he was?* He answered me, in *Latin*, *Christianus*; but so very weak and faint, that he could scarce stand or speak. Immediately I gave him a dram and a piece of bread to cherish him, and asked him what countryman he was? He said *Espaniola*, and then uttered all the thankfulness imaginable for his deliverance. *Seignior* (said I, with as much *Spanish* as I was master of) let us talk afterwards, but fight now; here, take this sword and pistol, and do what you can. And indeed he did so with such courage and intrepidity, that he cut two of them to pieces in an instant, (the savages not having the power to fly for their lives.) I ordered *Friday* to run for those pieces we had left at the tree, which he brought to me with great swiftness, and then I gave him my musket, while I loaded the rest. But now  
there

there happened a fierce encounter between the *Spaniard* and one of the savages, who had made at him with one of their wooden swords; and though the former was as brave as could be expected, having twice wounded his enemy in the head; yet being faint, the *Indian* had thrown him upon the ground, and was wresting my sword out of his hand, which the *Spaniard* very wisely quitting, drew out his pistol, and shot him through the body, before I could come near him, who was running to his assistance. As to *Friday*, he pursued the flying wretches with his hatchet, dispatching three, but the rest were too nimble for him. The *Spaniard* taking one the fowling pieces, wounded two, who running into the wood, *Friday* pursued and killed one; but the other, notwithstanding his wounds, plunged himself into the sea and swam to those two who were left in the canoe, which with one wounded, were all that escaped out of one and twenty. The account is as follows:

<i>Killed at the first shot from the tree</i>	} 3	<i>Killed, being fallen of their wounds.</i>	} 4
<i>At the second shot By Friday in the boat</i>	2	<i>Escaped in the boat, whereof one wounded,</i>	} 4
<i>Ditto, of those first wounded</i>	2	<i>if not slain</i>	
<i>Ditto, in the wood</i>	1		
<i>By the Spaniard</i>	3		
			Total 21

The savages in the canoe worked very hard to get out of our reach, and *Friday* was as eager in pursuing them; and indeed I was no less anxious about their escape, lest, after the news had been carried to their people, they should return in multitudes, and destroy us. So being resolved to pursue them, I jumped into one of their canoes, and bid *Friday* to follow me; but no sooner was I in, when to my surprize, I found another poor creature bound hand and foot for the slaughter, just as the *Spaniard* had been, with very little life in him. Immediately I unbound him, and would have helped him up, but he could neither stand nor speak, but groaned piteously, thinking he was only unbound in order to be slain. Hereupon I bid *Friday* speak to him, and tell him of his deliverance; when pulling out my bottle, I made the poor wretch drink a dram; which, with the joyful news he had received, so revived his heart, that he sat up in the boat. As soon as *Friday* began to hear him speak, and looked more fully in his face, it would have moved any one to tears to perceive his uncommon transports of joy; for he kissed him, embraced him, hugged him, cried, laughed, hallooed, jumped about, danced, sung, then cried again, wrung his hands, beat his face and head, then sung and jumped about again, like a distracted creature;

creature ; so that it was a great while before I could make him speak to me, or tell me what was the matter with him ; but when he came to the liberty of his speech, at last he told me, it was his father.

Here indeed I was infinitely moved to see the dutiful and tender affection this poor savage had to his aged parent. He would sit down by him in the boat, open his breast, and hold his father's head close to his bottom half an hour together to nourish it ; then he took his arms and ankles, which were stiff and numbed with binding, and chafed and rubbed them with his hands ; by which means, perceiving what the case was, I gave him some rum, which proved of great benefit to him.

While we were busy in this action, the savages had gotten almost out of sight ; and happy it was we did not pursue them ; for there arose from the north west, which continued all night long, such a violent storm, that I could not suppose otherwise, but that they were all drowned. After this I called *Friday* to me, and asked him, if he had given his father any bread ? He shook his head, and said, *None, not one bit, me eat a up all ;* so I gave him a cake of bread out of a little pouch I carried for this end. I likewise gave him a dram for himself, and two or three bunches of raisins for his father. Both these he carried to him, for he would make him drink the dram to comfort him. Away he then runs out of the boat as if he was bewitched, with such an extraordinary swiftness, that he was out of sight as it were in an instant ; but at his return I perceived him slacken his pace, because he had something in his hand : And this I found to be, as he approached nearer, an earthen jug to bring his father some water in, with two more cakes of bread, which he delivered into my hands. Being very thirsty myself, I drank some of the water, of which when his father had drank sufficiently, it more revived his spirits than all the rum I had given him.

I then called *Friday* to me, and ordered him to carry the *Spaniard* one of the cakes and some water, who was reposing himself upon a green place under the shade of a tree, but so weak that though he exerted himself, he could not stand upon his feet. Upon which I ordered *Friday* to rub and bathe his ankles with rum, as he did his father's. But every minute he was employed in this, he would cast a wishful eye towards the boat, where he left his father sitting ; when suddenly, not being to be seen, he flew like lightning to him ; and finding he only laid himself down to ease his limbs, he returned back to me presently ; and then I spoke to the *Spaniard* to let *Friday* help him, and lead him to the boat, in order to be conveyed to my dwelling, where I would take care of him : Upon which *Friday* made nothing to take him upon his back  
and

and so carried him to the canoe, setting him close by his father; and presently stepping out again, launched the boat off, and paddled it along the shore faster than I could walk, though the wind blew very hard too; and having brought them safe to the creek, away he runs to fetch the other canoe, which he brought to the creek almost as soon as I got to it by land; when waſting me over, he took our new gueſts out of the boat: But ſo weak were they, that I was forced to make a kind of hand barrow; and when I came to my cattle, not being willing to make an entrance into my wall, we made them a handsome tent, covered with old ſails and boughs of trees, making two good beds of rice ſtraw, with blankets to lie upon and cover them. Thus, like an absolute king, over ſubjects who owed their lives unto me, I thought myſelf very remarkable, eſpecially conſidering I had three religions in my kingdom, my man *Friday* being a Proteſtant, his father a Pagan, and the *Spaniard* a Papiſt; but I gave liberty of conſcience to them all.

To get proviſions for my poor weak ſubjects, I ordered *Friday* to kill me a yearling goat, which when he had done, I cut off the hind quarters, and chopping it into ſmall pieces, boiled and ſtewed it, putting barley and rice into the broth. This I carried into their tent, ſet a table, dined with them myſelf, and encouraged them. *Friday* was my interpreter to his father, and indeed to the *Spaniard* too, who ſpoke the language of the ſavages pretty well. After dinner I ordered *Friday* to fetch home all our arms from the field of battle, and the next day to bury the dead bodies, which he did accordingly.

And now I made *Friday* enquire of his father, whether he thought thoſe ſavages had eſcaped the late ſtorm in their canoe; and if ſo, whether they would not return with a power too great for us to reſiſt? He answered, that he thought it impoſſible they ſhould outlive the ſtorm, or if they were driven ſouthwardly, they would come to a land where they would as certainly be devoured, as if they were drowned in the ſea. And ſuppoſe they had attained their own country, the ſtrange- neſs of their bloody and fatal attack, would make them tell their people, that the reſt of them were killed by thunder and lightning, not by the hand of man, but by two heavenly ſpirits (meaning *Friday* and me) who were ſent from above to deſtroy them: And this, he ſaid, he knew, becauſe he heard them ſay the ſame to one another. And indeed he was in the right on't; for I have heard ſince, that theſe four men gave out, that whoever went to that enchanted iſland, would be deſtroyed by fire from the gods.

No canoes appearing ſome time after, as I expected, my apprehenſions ceaſed; inſtead of which my former thoughts of a voyage took place, eſpecially when *Friday*'s father aſſured me I ſhould have good uſage in his country. As to the *Spaniard*,

he told me, that sixteen more of his countrymen and *Portuguese*, who had been shipwrecked, made their escape thither; that though they were in union with the savages, yet they were very miserable for want of provisions and other necessaries. When I asked him about the particulars of his voyage, he answered, that their ship was bound from *Rio de la Plata* to the *Havanna*, that when the ship was lost, only five men perished in the ocean; the rest, having saved themselves in the boat, were now landed on the main continent. And what do they intend to do there? said I. He replied, they had concerted measures to escape by building them a vessel, but they had neither tools nor provisions; so that all their designs came to nothing. Supposing, said I, I should make them a proposal, and invite them here, would they not carry me prisoner to *New Spain*? He answered, no, for he knew them to be such honest men as would scorn to act such inhuman baseness to their deliverer: That, if I pleased, he and the old savage would go over to them, talk with them about it, and bring me an answer; that they should all swear fidelity to me as their leader, upon the holy sacraments; and that for his part he would not only do the same, but stand by me to the last drop of his blood, should there be occasion.

These solemn assurances made me resolve to grant them relief, and to send these two over for that purpose: But when every thing was ready, the *Spaniard* raised an objection which carried a great deal of weight in it. *You know, Sir*, said he, *that being some time with you, I cannot but be sensible of your stock of rice and corn, sufficient, perhaps, for us at present, but not for them, should they come over presently; much less to victual a vessel for an intended voyage. Want might be as great an occasion for them to disagree and rebel, as the children of Israel did against God himself, when they wanted bread in the wilderness: And therefore my advice is to wait another harvest, and, in the mean time, cultivate and improve some more land, whereby we may have plenty of provisions, in order to execute our design.*

This advice of the *Spaniard* I approved of extremely, and so satisfied was I of his fidelity, that I esteemed him ever after. And thus we all four went to work upon some more land, and against seed time we had got as much sowed and trimmed up, as was sufficient to sow twenty two bushels of barley on, and sixteen jars of rice, which was in short all the seed we had to spare. As we were four in number, and by this time all in good health, we feared not an hundred *Indians*, should they venture to attack us: And while the corn was growing, I pitched upon some trees fit to build us a large vessel in case the *Spaniards* came over; which being marked, I ordered *Friday* and his father to cut them down, appointing the *Spaniard*, who was now my *Privy Counsellor*, to oversee and direct the work.

work. I likewise increased my flocks of goats, by shooting the wild dams, and bringing home their kids to my enclosure: Nor did I neglect the grape season, but cured them as usual: though I had such a quantity now, as would have filled eight barrels with raisins. And thus all of us being employed, they in working, and I in providing for them, till harvest came, God Almighty blessed the increase of it so much, that from twenty two barrels of barley, we threshed out two hundred and twenty, and the like quantity of rice, sufficient to victual any ship, to carry me and all the *Spaniards* to any part of *America*.

Thus the principal objection being answered by a sufficient stock of provision, I sent my two ambassadors over to the main, with a regal authority, to administer the oaths of allegiance and fidelity, and have an instrument signed under their hands, though I never asked whether they had pen, ink, or paper: when giving each of them a musket, eight charges of powder and ball, and provision enough for eight days, they sailed away with a fair gale, on a day when the moon was at full.

Scarce a fortnight had passed over my head, but impatient for their return, I laid me down to sleep one morning, when a strange accident happened, which was ushered in by my men's coming running to me, and calling aloud, *Master, Master, they are come, they are come*. Upon which, not dreaming of any danger, out I jumps from my bed, puts on my clothes, and hurries through my little grove, when looking towards the sea, I perceived a boat about a league and a half distant, standing in for the shore, with the wind fair. I beheld they did not come from the side where the land lay on, but from the southernmost end of the island: So these being none of the people we wanted, I ordered *Friday* to lie still, till such time as I descended from the mountain, which, with my ladder, I now ascended, in order to discover more fully what they were: And now, with the help of my perspective glass, I plainly perceived an *English* ship, which I concluded it to be, by the fashion of its long boat, and which filled me with such uncommon transports of joy, that I cannot tell how to describe; and yet some secret doubts hung about me, proceeding from I know not what cause, as though I had reason to be upon my guard. And indeed I would have no man condemn the secret hints and intimations of danger, which very often are given, when he may imagine there is no possibility of its being real: For had I not been warned by this silent admonition, I had been in a worse station than before, and perhaps inevitably ruined.

It was not long before I perceived the boat to approach the shore, as though they looked for a place where they might conveniently land; and at last they ran their boat on shore upon the beach, about half a mile distance, which proved so  
much

much the happier for me ; since had they come into the creek, they had landed just at my door, and might not only have forced me out of my cabin, but plundered me of all I had in the world. Now I was fully convinced they were all *Englishmen*, three of which were unarmed and bound ; when immediately the first four or five leaped on shore, and took those three out of the boat as prisoners. One of whom I could perceive used the most passionate gestures of entreaty, affliction, and despair, while the others, in a lesser degree, shewed abundance of concern.

Not knowing the meaning of this, I was very much astonished, and I beckoned to *Friday*, (who was below) to ascend the mountain, and likewise view this sight. *O Master*, says he to me, *you see English mans eat prisoners, as well as savage mans.* And do you think they will eat them, *Friday*? said I. *Yes*, said *Friday*, *they eat all up.* No no, said I, *Friday*, I am much more concerned lest they murder them ; but as for eating them up, that I am sure they never will.

And now I not only lamented my misfortune in not having the *Spaniard* and savage with me, but also that I could not come within shot of them unperceived, (they having no fire arms among them) and save these three men, whom I thought they were going to kill with their swords. But some comfort it was to me, that I perceived they were set at liberty to go where they pleased, the rascally seamen scattering about as though they had a mind to see the place : And so long did they negligently ramble, that the tide had ebbed so low, as to leave the boat aground. Nor were the two men that were in her more circumspect, for having drank a little too much liquor, they fell fast asleep ; but one of them waking before the other, and perceiving the boat too fast aground for his strength to remove it, he halloo'd out to the rest, who made all possible expedition to him : But, as Providence ordered it, all their force was ineffectual to launch her, when I could hear them speak one to another, *Why let her alone, Jack, can't ye, she'll float next tide* ; by which words I was fully confirmed that they were my own countrymen. All this while I lay very quiet, as being fully sensible, it could be no less than ten hours before the boat would be afloat, and then it would be so dark, as that they could not easily perceive me, by which means I should be at more liberty to hear their talk, and observe all their motions : Not but that I prepared for my defence before ; yet as I had now another sort of enemies to combat with, I acted with more caution. I took two fuzees on my shoulders, and gave *Friday* three muskets ; besides my formidable goat skin coat, and monstrous cap, made me look as fierce and terrible as *Hercules* of old, especially when two pistols



tols were stuck in my belt, and my naked sword hanging by my side.

It was my design at first not to make any attempt till it was dark; but it being now two o'clock, in the very heat of the day, the sailors were all straggling into the woods, and undoubtedly were lain down to sleep. The three poor distressed creatures, too anxious to get any repose, were however seated under the shade of a great tree, about a quarter of a mile from me: Upon which, without any more ado, I approached towards them, with my man following behind me, and before I was perceived, I called aloud to them in *Spanish*, *What are ye Gentlemen?*

At these words they started up in great confusion, and, beholding the strange figure I made, they returned no answer, but seemed as if they would fly from me. *Gentlemen*, (said I, in *English*) *don't be afraid: Perhaps you have a friend nearer you than you expect.* He must be from Heaven, said one of them gravely, and pulling off his hat, for we are past all help in this world. *All help is from Heaven*, said I; but Sir, as I have perceived every action between you and those brutes, since your landing, only inform me how to assist you, and I will do it to the utmost of my power.

Am I talking with God or man (said he, in melting tears) Are you of human kind, or an Angel! Sir, said I, *my poor habit may tell you I am a man, and an Englishman, willing to assist you, having but this servant only: Here are arms and ammunition: Tell freely your condition, can we serve you?* The story, said he, is too long to relate, since our butchers are so near. But, Sir, I was master of that ship, my men have mutinied, and it is a favour they have put my mate, this passenger, and me, on shore, without murdering us, though we expect nothing but to perish here. *Are your enemies gone?* said I. No, replied he, (pointing to a thicket) there they lie, while my heart trembles, lest having seen and heard us, they should murder us all. *Have they fire arms?* said I. They have but two pieces, said he, one of which is left in the boat: He told me there were two enormous villains among them, that were the authors of this mutiny, who if they were killed or seized, might induce the rest to return to their obedience. Well, well, said I, let us retire farther under the covering of the woods, and there it was I made these conditions with him:

I. That while they stayed in the island, they should not pretend to any authority; but be entirely conformable to my orders, and return me the arms, which I should put into their hands.

II. That if the ship was recovered, they should afford Friday and I our passage gratis to *England*.

When he had given me all the satisfaction I could desire, I gave each of them a gun, with powder and ball sufficient, advising them to fire upon them as they lay. The captain modestly said, that he was sorry to kill them, though on the other hand, to let these villains escape, who were the authors of this misery, might be the ruin of us all, should they bring the ship's company upon us. Well, said I, do as you think fit: And so he accordingly fired, killing one of the Captain's chiefest enemies, and wounding the other, who eagerly called for assistance; but the captain, (who had reserved his piece) coming up to him, *Sirrah*, said he, *'tis too late to call for assistance, you should rather cry to God to pardon your willany*; so knocked him down with the stock of his gun: Three others were also slightly wounded, who, at my approach, cried out for mercy. This the captain granted, upon condition that they would swear to be true to him in recovering the ship, which they solemnly did; however, I obliged the captain to keep them bound. After which I sent *Friday* and the captain's mate to secure the boat, and bring away the oars and sail; when at their return, three men coming back, and seeing their late distressed captain, now their conqueror, submitted to be bound also. And then it was, that having more liberty, I related the adventures of my whole life, which he heard with a serious and wonderful attention. After this, I carried him and his two men into my little fortified castle, shewed them all my conveniences, and refreshed them with such provisions as I could afford. When this was over, we began to consider about regaining the ship. He said, that there were 26 hands on board, who knowing their lives were forfeited by the law, for conspiracy and mutiny, would grow so very hardened, that it would be dangerous for our small company to attack them. This was a reasonable inference indeed; but something we did resolve on, and immediately put in execution; for we heaved the boat upon the beach so high, that she could not shoot off at high water mark, and broke a hole in her, not easily to be stopped; and so all the signals they gave for the boat to come on board were in vain. This obliged them to send another boat ashore, with ten men armed, whose faces the captain plainly described, the boatswain being the chief officer; but he said there were three honest lads among them, who were forced into the conspiracy. Hereupon I gave him fresh courage (for I had perceived he was in concern) in the mean while securing our prisoners, part in my castle, over whom *Friday* stood sentinel; but two others we took into our service, and then thought ourselves strong enough to adventure a battle. When the sailors landed, and beheld their boat in that condition, they not only halloo'd, but fired for their companions to hear, yet they received no answer. This struck them with horror and amazement,

amazement, thinking their companions were murdered; then they made as if they would return to the ship; I could perceive the captain's countenance change at this, till of a sudden three men were ordered to look after the boat, while the other seven leaped on shore, in order to search for their companions: And indeed they came to the brow of the hill, near my ancient castle, from whence they could see a great way into the woods, and there shouting and hallooing till tired and weary, at length seated themselves under a spreading tree. My opinion was, that nothing could be done till night, when I might use some artifice to get them out of the boat: But of a sudden they all started up, and made to the sea side: Hereupon I ordered *Friday* and the captain's mate to go over the creek, and halloo as loud as they could, and so, decoying them into the woods, come round to me again. And this indeed had its effect; for they followed the noise, till coming westward to the creek, they called for their boat to carry them over, taking one of the men out of her, and leaving two to look after her, having fastened her to the stump of a little tree on shore. Hereupon immediately the captain and our party, passing the creek out of their sight, we surprized them both, by the captain's knocking down one, and ordering the other to surrender on pain of death, and who, being the most honest of them all, sincerely joined with us. By this time it was pretty late, when returning to their boat, which they found aground in the creek, the tide out, and the men gone; they ran about, wringing their hands, crying it was an enchanted island, and that they should be all murdered by spirits or devils. My men would willingly have fallen upon them, but I would not agree to hazard any of our party. But to be more certain, *Friday* and the captain crawled upon their hands and feet, as near as possible; and when the boatswain approached in sight, so eager was the captain, that he fired and killed him on the spot; *Friday* wounded the next man, and the third ran away. Hereupon, I advanced with my whole army, and, it being dark, I ordered the man we had surprized with the boat, to call them by their names, and to parley with them. Accordingly he called out aloud, *Tom Smith! Tom Smith!* He answered, *Who's that? Robinson!* The other answered, *For God's sake, Tom, surrender immediately, or you are all dead men.* Who must we surrender to? says *Smith*. *To our captain and fifty men here, who have taken me prisoner, wounded Will Frye, and killed the boatswain.* Shall we have quarters then? said he. Hereupon the captain calls out, *You, Smith, you know my voice; surrender immediately, and you shall all have your lives granted, except Will Atkins.* Hereupon *Atkins* cried out, *What have I done, captain, more than the rest, who have been as bad as me?* But that was a lie, for he was the person that laid hold of him, and bound him. How-

ever, he was ordered to submit to the Governour's mercy, for such was I called. And so, laying down their arms, we bound them all, and seized on their boat.

After this the captain expostulated with them, telling them, that the Governour was an *Englishman*, who might execute them there; but he thought they would be sent to *England*, except *Will Atkins*, who was ordered to prepare for death next morning. Hereupon *Atkins* implored the captain to intercede for his life, and the rest that they might not be sent to *England*. Thus answered our project for seizing the ship. For sending *Atkins*, and two of the worst, fast bound, to the cave, and the rest being committed to my bower, I sent the captain, to tamper with them, in the Governour's name, offering them pardon, if they would assist him in recovering the ship. Upon which they all promised to stand by him till their last drop of blood; and whoever acted treacherously should be hanged in chains upon the beach. They were all released on these assurances; and then the captain repaired the other boat, making his passenger captain, with four men well armed; while his mate, himself, and five men more went in the other. By midnight they came within call of the ship, when the captain ordered *Robinson* to hail her, and tell them that, with great difficulty, they had found the men at last. But while they were discourting, the captain, his mate, and the rest entered, and knocked down the second mate and carpenter, secured those that were upon deck, by putting them under hatches, while the other boat's crew entered and secured the fore-castle; then broke into the round house, where the mate, after some resistance, shot the pirate captain through the head; upon which all the rest yielded themselves prisoners. And thus the ship being recovered, the joyful signal was fired, which I heard with the greatest joy imaginable: Nor was it long before he brought the ship to an anchor at the creek's mouth, when coming to me unawares, *There*, says he, *my dearest friend and deliverer, there is your ship, and we are your servants*; a comfort to unspeakable, as made me swoon in his arms, while, with gratitude to heaven, we were tenderly embracing each other.

Nothing now remained, but to consult what we should do with the prisoners, two of which he thought not safe to take on board. Hereupon, concerting with the captain, I dressed myself in one of his suits, and sending for them, told them, that I was going to leave the island with all my people, if they would tarry there, their lives should be spared; if not, they should be hanged at the first port we came to. They agreed to stay. Hereupon I told them my whole story, charging them to be kind to the *Spaniards* that were expected, gave them all my arms, and intorning them with every thing necessary for their subsistence, I and my man remained on board. But the

next

next morning two of the men came swimming to the ship's side, desiring the captain to take them on board, though he hanged them afterwards, complaining mightily how barbarously the others used them. Upon which I prevailed with the captain to take them in, and being severely whipped and pickled, they proved more honest for the future. And so I bade farewell to this island, carrying along with me my money, parrot, umbrella, and goat skin cap, setting sail Dec. 12, 1686, after twenty eight years, two months, and nineteen days residence, that same day and month that I escaped from *Sallee*, landing in *England*, June 11, 1687, after thirty five years absence from my own country, which rendered me altogether an utter stranger.

Here I found my first captain's widow alive, who had buried a second husband, but in very mean circumstances, and whom I made mighty easy upon my account. Soon after I went down to *Yorksbiro*, where all my family were expired, except two sisters, and as many of one of my brother's children. I found no provision had been made for me, they concluding I had been long since dead; so that I was but in a very slender situation. Indeed the captain did me a great kindness, by his report to the owners, how I had delivered their ship on the desolate island, upon which they made me a present of £200 sterling. I next went to *Lisbon*, taking my man *Friday* with me, and arriving there in *April*, I met the *Portuguese* captain, who took me on board on the *African* coast; but being ancient, he had left off the sea, and resigned all his business to his son, who followed the *Brazil* trade. So altered both of us were, that we did not know each other at first, till I discovered myself more fully to him. After a few embraces, I began to enquire after my concerns, and then the old gentleman told me, that it was nine years since he had been at *Brazil*, where my partner was then living, but my trustees were both dead; that it was his belief, I should have a good account of the product of my plantation; that the imagination of my being lost, had obliged my trustees to give an estimate of my share to the *Procurator Fiscal*, who, in case of my not returning, had given one third to the King, and the rest to the *Monastery of St. Augustine*; but if I put in my claim, or any one for me, it would be returned, except the yearly product, which was given to the poor. I then desired him to tell me, what improvement he thought had been made of my plantation, and whether he imagined it was worth my while to look after it? He answered, he did not know how much it was improved, but this he was certain of, that my partner was grown vastly rich upon his half of it; and that he had been informed, that the King had 200 moidores per annum, for his third part. He added, that the survivors of my trustees were persons of an ingenious character;

character; that my partner could witness my title, my name being registered in the country, by which means indisputably I should recover considerable sums of money. But, answered I, how could my trustees dispose of my effects, when I made you only my heir? This, he said, was true, but there being no affidavit made of my death, he could not act as an executor. However, he had ordered his son, (then at *Brazil*) to act by procuracy upon my account, and had taken possession of my sugar house, having accounted himself for eight years with my partners and trustees for the profits, of which he would give me a good account.

And indeed this he performed very faithfully in a few days, making himself indebted to me 470 moidores of gold, over and above what had been lost at sea, after I had left the place. And then he recounted to me what misfortunes he had gone through, which forced my money out of his hands, to buy part in a new ship: *But (says he) you shall not want, take this, and when my son returns, every farthing shall be paid you.* Upon which he put into my hand a purse of 150 moidores in gold, as likewise the instrument containing the title to the ship in which his son was, and which he offered as security for the remainder. But really when I saw so much goodness, generosity, tenderness, and real honesty, I had not the heart to accept it, for fear he should straiten himself on my account. *'Tis true,* said he, *it may do so; but the money is yours, not mine, and you may have the greatest occasion for it.* However I returned fifty of them, promising to give him the other hundred, when I got my effects in my hands, saying I designed to go myself for that purpose. But he told me, he could save me that trouble; and so caused me to enter my name with a public notary, as likewise my affidavit, with a procuracy fixed to it; and this he advised me to send in a letter to one of his acquaintance, a merchant at *Brazil*; and indeed nothing could be more faithfully and honourably observed; for in seven months time I had a very faithful account of all my effects, what sums of money were raised, what expended, and what remained for my use: In a word, I found myself worth 4000l. sterling, and 100l per annum. Nor was this all, for my partner congratulated me upon my being alive, telling me how much my plantation was improved, what negroes were at work, and how many *Ave Marias* he had said to the Virgin *Mary* for my preservation, desiring me to accept kindly some presents he had sent me, which I found shewed the greatest generosity.

No sooner did the ship arrive, but I rewarded my faithful captain, by returning him the hundred moidores; and not only forgiving him all he owed me, I allowed him yearly a hundred more, and fifty to his son, during their lives. And

now being resolved to go to *England*, I returned letters of thanks to the Prior of *St. Augustine*, and in particular to my old partner, with very suitable presents. By the captain's advice, I was persuaded to go by land to *Calais*, and there take passage for *England*: When as it happened, I got a young *English* gentleman, a merchant's son at *Lisbon*, to accompany me, together with two *English* and two *Portuguese* gentlemen, so that with a *Portuguese* servant, an *English* sailor, and my man *Friday*, there were nine in number.

Thus armed and equipt, we set out, and came to *Madrid*, when the summer decaying, we hasted to *Navarre*, where we were informed that there was scarcely any passing, by reason of the prodigious quantity of snow; so that we were obliged to abide near twenty days at *Pampeluna*, and at last to take a guide to conduct us safe towards *Thoulouse*. And now twelve other gentlemen joining with us, together with their servants, we had a very jolly company. Away our guide led us by the frightful mountains, and through so many intricate mazes and windings, that we insensibly pass them, which as we travelled along ushered us to the prospect of the fruitful and charming provinces of *Languedoc* and *Gascony*.

But now came on two adventures, both tragical and comical. 1st, Our guide was encountered by three wolves and a bear, who set upon him and his horse, and wounded him in three places: Upon which my man riding up to his assistance, shot one of them dead, on which the others ran into the woods. But the pleasantest adventure was, to see my man attack the bear. This creature, if let alone, will never meddle with you: And this my man *Friday* very well knew, and so begging leave of me in broken *English*, he told us, *He would make good laugh*. Why, you silly fool, said I, he'll eat you up at a mouthful. *Eatee me up!* replied he, *me eatee him, and make much good laugh*. Upon which, pulling off his boots, he claps on his pumps, and running after the monstrous beast, calls out, that he wanted to speak with him; and then throwing stones on purpose to incense him, the beast turns about in a fury, and, with prodigious strides shuffles after him. But though he could not keep pace with *Friday*, who made up to us as it were for help, yet, being angry, *You dog*, said I, *immediately take horse, and let us shoot the creature*. But he cried, *Dear Master, no shot, me make you much laugh*. And so he turned about, making signs to follow, while the bear ran after him, till coming to a great oak, he ascended in a minute, leaving his gun at the bottom of it. Nor did the bear make any difficulty of it, but, notwithstanding his bulk, ascended like a cat. You must think I was not a little amazed at the folly of my man, not perceiving any thing to occasion our laughter, till we rode up nearer, and beheld the beast mounted on the  
oak,

oak, on the beginning of the same branch to which *Friday* clung at the father end, where the bear dared not come. Hereupon *Friday* cried out, *Now, Master me make much laugh, me make de bear dance.* Upon which he fell a shaking the bough, which made the creature look behind him to see how he could retreat. Then, as if the bear had understood his stammering *English*, *Why you not come farther, Mr. Bear?* said he. *Pray, Mr. Bear, come farther:* And then indeed we all burst into laughter, especially when we perceived *Friday* drop like a squirrel upon the ground, leaving the beast to make the best of his way down the tree. And now thinking it the most convenient time to kill him, *Friday* cried out, *O dear, Master, no shoot; me shoot by and by;* when taking up the gun, *Me not shoot yet,* said he, *me make once more much laugh.* And accordingly he was as good as his word, for the creature descending backwards from the tree very leisurely, before he could lay one foot on the ground, *Friday* shot him through the ear stone-dead, and looking to see if we were pleased, burst out into a hearty laugh, saying, *So we kill bear in my country; not with gun, but much long arrow.* Thus ended our diversion, to our great satisfaction, especially in a place where the terrible howlings struck us with continual terror. But the snow now growing very deep, particularly on the mountains, the ravenous creatures were obliged to seek for sustenance in the villages, where coming by surprise on the country people, they killed several of them, besides a great number of their sheep and horses.

Our guide told us, we had yet one more dangerous place to pass by; and if there were any more wolves in the country, there we should find them. This was a small plain, encompassed with woods, to get through a long lane, to the village where we were to lodge. When we entered the wood the sun was within half an hour of setting; and a little after it was set, we came into the plain, which was not above two furlongs over, and then we saw five great wolves cross the road, without taking notice of us, and so swift as though they were pursuing after their prey. Hereupon our guide, believing there were more coming, desired us to be upon our guard. Accordingly our eyes were very circumspect, till about a league farther we saw a dead horse, and near a dozen of wolves devouring its carcass. My man *Friday* said he would have fired at them, but I would not permit him: Nor had we gone half over the plain, but we heard dreadful howlings in a wood on our left, when presently we saw an hundred come up against us, as though they had been an experienced army. This obliged us to form ourselves in the best manner: and then I ordered that every other man should fire, that those who did not might be ready to give a second volley, should they advance upon us; and



and then every man to make use of his pistols. But there was no necessity for this; for the enemy being terrified, stopped at the noise of the fire; four of them were shot dead, and several others being wounded, went away, bleeding, as we could very plainly discover by the snow. And now remembering what had been often told me, that such was the majesty of a man's voice, as to strike terror even in the fiercest creatures, I ordered all my companions to halloo as loud as possible: And in this notion I was not altogether mistaken; for they immediately turned about upon the first halloo, and began to retire: Upon which, ordering a second volley in their rear, they galloped into the woods with great precipitation.

Thus we had some small time to load our pieces again, and then made all the haste we could on our way: But we had not rode far before we were obliged to put ourselves in a posture of defence as before, being alarmed with a very dreadful noise in the same wood on our left hand, the same way as we were to pass, only that it was at some distance from us. By this time the darksome clouds began to spread over the elements, and the light growing very dusky, made it so much the more to our disadvantage: But the noise still increasing more, we were fully assured, that it was the howling and yelling of those ravenous creatures: when presently three troops of wolves, appeared to our sight on our front, as though all these companions had a design to surround us, and devour us in spite of fate. But as they did not fall upon us immediately, we proceeded on our journey in the swiftest manner that the roads would permit our horses, which was only a large trot. It was in this manner we travelled, till such time as we discovered another wood, and had the prospect of its entrance, through which we were to pass at the farthest side of the plain. But surely none can express the terror we were in, when approaching the lane, we perceived a confused number of the fiercest wolves standing, and as it were, guarding its entrance. Nor were we long in this amazement, before another occasion of horror presented itself: For suddenly we heard the report of a gun at another opening into the wood; and looking that way, out ran a horse, bridled and saddled, flying with the greatest swiftness, and no less than sixteen or seventeen wolves pursuing him, in order to devour the poor creature: And unquestionably they did so, after they had run him down, not being capable to hold out that swiftness with which he at first escaped them.

When we rode up to that entrance from whence the horse came forth, there lay the carcasses of two men and another horse, mangled and torn by these devouring wolves: And undoubtedly one of these men was the person who fired the gun, which we had heard, for the piece lay by him; but alas! most

of the upper part of his body and his head was entombed in the bowels of these ravenous creatures.

What course to take, whether to proceed or retreat, we could not tell; but it was not long before the wolves themselves made us come to a resolution: For such numbers surrounded us, every one of whom expected their prey, that were our bodies to be divided among them, there would not be half a mouthful a piece. But happy, very happy, it was for us, that but a little way from the entrance, there lay some very large timber trees, which I supposed had been cut down and lay there for carriage, among which I drew my little troop, placing ourselves in a line behind one long tree, which served us for a breast work; when, desiring them to alight, we stood in a triangle, or three fronts, enclosing our horses in the centre, the only place where we could preserve them.

Never certainly was a more furious charge than what the wolves made upon us in this place; and the sight of the horses, which was the principal prey they aimed at, provoked their hunger, and added to their natural fierceness. They came on us with a most dreadful noise, that made the woods ring again, and beginning to mount our pieces of timber, I ordered every other man to fire as before directed; and indeed so well did they take their aim, that they killed several of the wolves at the first volley; but still we were obliged to keep a continual firing, by reason they came on like devils, pushing one another with the greatest fury. But our second volley something abated their courage; when stopping a little, we hoped they would have made the best of their way, however it did not prove so, for others made a new attempt upon us: And though in four firings we killed seventeen or eighteen of them, laming twice as many; yet they came on several times successively, as though they valued not their lives for the sake of their prey.

Unwilling was I to spend our last shot too suddenly: And therefore called my other servant, and giving him a horn of powder, bid him lay a large train quite along the timber, which he did, while *Friday* was charging my fuzee and his own, with the greatest dexterity. By this time the wolves coming up the timber, I set fire to the train, by snapping a discharged pistol close on the powder. This so scorched and terrified them, that some fell down, and others jumped in among us with the strength and terror of the flame, but these we immediately dispatched, when all the rest, frightened with the light, which the darksome night caused to appear more dreadful, began at length to retire: Upon which, ordering our last pistols to be fired at once, giving at the same time a great shout, the wolves were obliged to have recourse to their swiftness by turning tail; and then we sallied out upon twenty lame ones, cutting  
them

them in pieces with our swords, which obliged them to howl lamentably, to the terror of their fellow devourers, who resigned to us the field, as victorious conquerors. And, indeed, I question whether *Alexander, King of Macedon*, in any of his conquests, had more occasion for triumph than we had; for he was backed by numerous captains and soldiers of the greatest courage, constancy, and resolution; whereas our little army was obliged to combat a legion of devils, as it were, worse than cannibals, who, had they slain us, would have sacrificed us the same moment, to satisfy their voracious appetites.

Thus ended our bloody battle with the beasts, having killed threescore of them, and saved our lives from their fury. We still had a league to go farther, when, as we went, our ears were saluted with their most unwelcome howlings, expecting every moment another attack. But, in an hour's time, we arrived safe at the town where we were to lodge; and here we found the place strictly guarded, and all in terrible confusion, as well they might, by reason of the bears and wolves breaking into the vilage, in order to prey upon their cattle and people. The next morning we were obliged to take a new guide, by reason the other fell very bad of his wounds which he had received, as before mentioned. After we had reached *Thoulouse*, we came into a warm, pleasant, and fruitful country, not infested with wolves, nor any sort of ravenous creatures: And when we told our story there, they much blamed our guide, for conducting us through the forest at the foot of the mountains, and in such a severe season, when the snow obliged them to seek for shelter in the woods. When we informed them in what manner we placed ourselves, and the horses in the centre, then they exceedingly reprehended us, and told us, it was an hundred to one but we had all been destroyed; for that it was the sight of the horses, their so much desired prey, made the wolves more ragingly furious than they would have been; which was evident, by their being at other times really afraid of a gun; but then, being exceedingly hungry and furious upon that account, their eagerness to come at the horses made them insensible of their danger; and that if we had not by a continual fire, and at last, by the cunning stratagem of the train of powder, got the power over them, it had been great odds if their number had not overpowered us: Besides, it was a great mercy we alighted from our horses, and fought them with that courage and conduct, which, had we failed to do, every man of us, with our beasts, had been devoured. And indeed this was nothing but the truth; for, never in my life was I so sensible of danger, as when 300 devils came roaring upon us; to shun whose unwelcome company, if I was sure to meet a storm every week, I would rather go a thousand leagues by sea.

I think

I think I have nothing uncommon in my passage through *France* to take notice of, since other travellers of greater learning and ingenuity, have given a more ample account, than my pen is able to set forth. From *Tbouloufe* I travelled to *Paris*, from thence to *Calais*, where I took shipping, and landed at *Dover* the 14th of *January*, in a very cold season.

Thus come to the centre of my travels, I soon discovered my new found estate, and all the bills of exchange I had brought were currently paid. The good ancient widow, my only Privy Counsellor, thought no pains or care too great to procure my advantage; nor had I ever occasion to blame her fidelity, which drew from me an ample reward. I was for leaving my effects in her hands, intending to set out for *Lisbon*, and so to the *Brafils*; but as in the desolate Island I had some doubts about the Romish religion, so I knew there was little encouragement to settle there, without I would apostatize from the orthodox faith, or live in continual fear of the inquisition. Upon this account I resolved to sell my plantation, and to this intent I wrote to my old friend at *Lisbon*, who returned me an answer, to my great satisfaction, which was, that he could readily sell it there: However, if I thought it convenient to give him liberty to offer it in my name to the two merchants, the survivors of my trustees, residing at the *Brafils*, who consequently understood its intrinsic value, having lived just upon the spot, and who I was sensible were very rich, and therefore might be the more willing to purchase it; he did not in the least doubt, but I should make 4 or 5000 pieces of eight more of it, than I should do if I disposed of it any other manner whatsoever.

You may be sure I could not but agree with this kind and ingenuous proposal; and immediately I sent him an order to offer it unto them, which he accordingly did: So that about eight months after, the ship being in that time returned, he gave me a satisfactory account that they not only willingly accepted the offer, but that they had also remitted thirty three thousand pieces of eight, to a correspondent of their own at *Lisbon*, in order to pay for its purchase.

Hereupon, in return, I signed the instrument of sale, according to form, which they had sent from *Lisbon*, and returned it again to my old friend, he having sent me, for my estate, bills of three hundred twenty eight thousand pieces of eight, reserving the payment of one hundred moidores *per annum*, which I had allowed him during life, as also fifty to his son during life, according to my faithful promise, which the plantation was to make good as rent charge.

And thus having led my reader to the knowledge of the first part of my life, so remarkable for the many peculiar providences that attended it, floating in an ocean of uncertainty and disappointment,

disappointment, of adversity and prosperity, beginning foot-ly, and yet ending happily; methinks, now I am come to a safe and pleasant haven, 'tis time to cast out my anchor, and laying up my vessel, bid (for a while) adieu to foreign adventures. I had now other concerns to look after, the care my brother's two sons, which, with the good widow's persi-sions, obliged me to continue at home seven years. On these children I bred up a gentleman, and the other an ex-rienced sailor, remarkable for his courage and bravery. Besides this I married a virtuous young gentlewoman, of a ve-good family, by whom I had two sons and one daughter. But my dear and tender wife leaving this earthly stage (as you will hear in the second part of my life, which tending my soul as it were asunder) my native country became as it were tiresome to me: And my nephew happening to come from sea, tempted me to venture another voyage to the *East Indies*, which I did in the year 1664, at which time I visited my island, and informed myself of every thing that happened since my departure.

One might reasonably imagine, that what I had suffered, together with an advanced age, and the fear of losing not only what I had gotten, but my life also, might have choaked up all the seeds of youthful ambition and curiosity, and put a lasting period to my wandering inclinations. But, as nothing but death can fully allay the active part of my life, no less remarkable for the many various contingencies of it: You will there perceive how I visited my little kingdom, saw my successors the *Spaniards*, had an account of the usage they met with from the *Englishmen*, agreeing and disagreeing, uniting and separating, till at last they were subjected to the *Spaniards*, who yet used them very honourably; together with the wonderful and suc-cessful battles over the *Indians*, who invaded, and thought to have conquered the Island, but were repelled by their invinci-ble courage and bravery, having taken eleven men and five women prisoners; by which, at my return, I found about twenty young children on my little kingdom. Here I stayed twenty days, left them supplies of all necessary things, as also a carpenter and smith, and shared the island into parts, reserv-ing the whole property to myself. Nor will you be insensible, by the account of these things, of several new adventures I have been engaged in, the batties I have fought, the deliver-ances I have made thereon: And while, in the surprizing re-lation of such remarkable occurrences, I shall describe many of God's kindest providences to me in partiular; no less con-spicuous in the same goodness, power and majesty of our great Creator, shews, one way or other, over the face of the earth.

T H E

FURTHER ADVENTURES

O F

ROBINSON CRUSOE.

*Wherein are contained several strange and surprising Accounts of his Travels, and most remarkable Transactions, both by Sea and Land.*

WHEN we consider the puissant force of nature, and what mighty influence it has many times over the temper of the mind ; it will be no such great wonder to think that my powerful reason should be overcome by a much stronger inclination. My late acquired kingdom ran continually in my thoughts all the day, and I dreamt of it in the night ; nay, I made it the continual subject of my talk, even to impertinence, when I was awake. I had such vapours in my head, that I actually supposed myself at my castle : That I not only perceived *Friday's* father, the old *Spaniard*, and the wicked sailors ; but that I talked and discoursed with them about their manner of living : That I heard those things related to me, which I found afterwards to be but too true ; and that I executed my judgments with the greatest severity upon the offenders. And indeed this anticipating all the pleasing joys of my life, scarcely afforded me one pleasant hour ; my dear and tender wife could not but take notice of it, which drew these affectionate speeches from her : *My dear*, said she, *I am really persuaded that some secret impulse from heaven occasions in you a determination to see the island again : Nor am I less sensible, but your being engaged to me and these dear children, is the only hindrance of your departure. I know, my dear, if I was in the grave, you would not long continue at home : Prevent not your happiness upon my account, whose only comfort centres in you. All that I can object is, that such an hazardous undertaking is no way consistent with a person of your years ; but if you are resolved to go, (added she weeping) only permit me to bear you company, and that is all that I desire.*

Such

Such endearing tenderness, graced with the most innocent, and yet most powerful charms, brought me insensibly into my right understanding : And when I considered all the transactions of my life, and particularly my new engagement ; that I had now one child born, and my wife big of another ; and that I had no occasion to seek for more riches, who already was blessed with sufficiency ; with much struggling, I altered my resolutions at last, resolving to apply myself to some business or other, which might put a period to such wandering inclinations. Hereupon I bought a little farm in the county of *Bedford*, with a resolution to move thither : Upon this there was a pretty convenient house, surrounded with land, very capable of improvement, which suited my temper, as to planting, managing and cultivating. Nor was I long before I entered upon my new settlement, having bought ploughs, harrows, cart, waggon, horses, cows, and sheep ; so that I now led the life of a country gentleman, and was as happy in my retirement as the greatest monarch in the world. And what made me think my happiness the greater was, that I was in that middle state of life which my father had so often recommended, much resembling the felicity of a rural retirement, which is elegantly described by the poet in these lines :

*Free from all vices, free from care,  
Age has no pain, and youth no snare.*

But in the midst of this my chiefest happiness, I was suddenly plunged in the greatest sorrow that I could possibly endure : For, when I least expected it, my dear and tender wife was forced to submit to the irresistible power of death, leaving this transitory life for a better. It is impossible for me to express the beauties of her mind, or the loveliness of her person ; neither can I too much lament her loss, which my latest breath shall record. Her influence was greater over me than the powers of my own reason, the importunities of friends, the instructions of a father, or the melting tears of a tender and disconsolate mother : In a word she was the standard of all my affairs, the centre of my enterprizes, and the principal engine to direct me in the course to happiness. But now, since the cruel hand of death had closed my dearest's eyes, in my thoughts, I seemed a stranger to the world ; my Privy Counsellor being gone, I was like a ship without a pilot, and that I could only run before the wind. And when I looked around me in this busy world, one part labouring for bread, and the other squandering away their estates ; this put me in mind how I had lived in my little kingdom, where reason and religion dictated to me, that there was something that certainly was the reason and end of life, which was far superior to what could be hoped for on this side the grave. My country delights were now as insipid and dull as music or sense to those  
who

who have neither taste or ingenuity. In short, resolving to leave off house keeping, I left my farm, and in a few months returned to *London*.

But neither could that great city, so famous for its variety of entertainments, afford me any agreeable delight. A state of idleness I found to be the very dregs of life, and most hurtful to body and soul. It was now the beginning of the year 1693, at which time my nephew (who I before observed had been brought up to the sea, advanced to be captain of a ship) was returned from a short voyage to *Bilboa*, the first he had made in that station. He comes to me one morning, telling me, that some merchants of his acquaintance had proposed to him to go a voyage for them to the *East Indies* and *China*, in the manner of private traders: *And now, Uncle*, said he, *if you'll accompany me thither, I'll engage to land you upon your old island, there to behold the state of your little kingdom.*

It was just before he came in, my thoughts were fixed to get a patent for its possession, and then to fill it with inhabitants. After I had paused a little while, and looked stedfastly on him, *What devil, or spirit*, said I, *sent you here with this unlucky errand?* He startled at first, but recovering himself, when he perceived I was not offended: *Sir*, replied he, what I have proposed cannot, I hope, be styled unlucky, since certainly you must be desirous to see your little territory, where you reigned with more content than any of your brother kings in the universe. *Nephew*, said I, if you will leave me there, and call for me as you come back, I care not if I give my consent: But he answered, that the merchants would not allow their vessel, laden with an infinite value, to return there again, which was a month's sail out of the way: Besides, *Sir*, said he, suppose I should miscarry, was your request granted, why then you would be in the same state as before. This indeed carried a great deal of reason in it, but we found out a remedy, and that was, to carry a trained sloop on board, ready to be set up in the island, by the assistance of some carpenters which we should carry with us, that would be fitted in a few days to go to sea. I was not long forming my resolution, which overswayed my good friend the widow's persuasions, and the natural affection I should bear to my young children. I made my will, and settled my estate in such a manner, that I was perfectly easy that the poor infants would have justice done them. The good widow not only undertook to make provision for my voyage, but also took the charge of my domestic affairs, and to provide for my children's education; and indeed no mother could take more care, or understand that office better, which I lived to reward, and to return her my hearty thanks for.

The beginning of *January* 1694-5, my nephew being ready to sail, I and *Friday* went on board in the *Dovens* on the



8th; having, besides that sloop already mentioned, a very considerable cargo for my new colony. First, I had some servants, whom I proposed to leave there as inhabitants, or to work while I staid there, as they should appear willing: There were two carpenters, a smith, and a very ingenious fellow who was jack of all trades; for he was not only a cooper by trade, but was also dexterous at making wheels and hand mills to grind corn, likewise a good turner and a good pot maker. I also carried a taylor, who consented to stay in my plantation, and proved a most necessary fellow in the island. As to my cargo, it consisted of a sufficient quantity of linen, and *English* stuffs, for clothing the *Spaniards* that I expected to find there; as likewise gloves, hats, shoes, stockings; together with beds, bedding, and household stuff, especially kitchen utensils, with pots, kettles, pewter, brass, &c. also nails, tools of all sorts, staples, hooks, hinges, and all other things necessary; all which, I think, cost me about £300. Nor was this all, for I carried an hundred spare arms, muskets, and fuzees, besides some pistols, a considerable quantity of several sorts of shot, two brass cannon, besides swords, cutlasses, and the iron part for some pikes and halberts; and I made my nephew take with us two small quarter deck guns more than he had occasion for in his ship, to leave behind, if there was a necessity: So that we might build a fort there, and man it against all opposers whatsoever.

Well, we put out to sea; and though I can't say this voyage was so unprosperous as my others had been, yet contrary winds drove us so far northward, that we were obliged to put in at *Galway* in *Ireland*, where we lay wind bound two and twenty days. Here indeed our provisions were very cheap, and we added to our ship's stores, by taking in several live hogs, two cows and calves, which I then resolved to put on shore in my island, if our necessities did not call for them. On the 5th of *February* we sailed from *Ireland*, with a very fair gale, which lasted for some days; and, I think it was about the 20th of the same month, late in the evening, when the mate informed us, that he saw a flash of fire, and heard a gun fired; and while he was speaking, a boy came in, and told us the boatswain heard another. Upon which, we all ran to the quarter deck, from whence, in a few minutes we perceived a terrible fire at a distance. We had immediate recourse to our reckonings, in which we were all of opinion that there could be no land that way, it appearing to be at *N. N. W.* Hereupon we concluded that some ship had taken fire at sea, and that it could not be far off, by the report of the guns which we had heard. We made up directly to it, and in half an hour's time, wind being fair, we could plainly perceive a great ship on fire in the middle of the sea. Touched with this unhappy disaster, and considering

sidering my former circumstances, when the *Portuguese* captain took me up, I immediately ordered five guns to be fired, that the poor creatures (not seeing us, it being dark, as we could perceive their flame) might be sensible there was a deliverance at hand, and consequently might endeavour to save themselves in their boat. Nor was it long before the ship blew up in the air, and the fire extinguished in the ocean. But supposing them all to be in their boats, we hung out all our lanterns, and kept firing till eight o'clock in the morning; when, with our perspective glasses, we beheld two boats, full of people, making towards us, though the tide was against them, Then spreading out our ancient, and hanging out a waft as a signal for them to come on board, in half an hour's time we came up to them, and took them all in, there being no less than 64 men, women and children. It was a *French* merchant ship of 300 tons, homeward bound from *Quebeck* in the river of *Canada*. The master informed me, how by the negligence of the steersman, the steerage was set on fire; that at his outcry for help, the fire was, as they thought, totally extinguished; but that some sparks getting between the timber and between the ceiling, it proceeded into the hold, where there was no resisting it, that then they got into their boats, as creatures in the last extremity, with what provision they had, together with oars, sails, and a compass, intending to go back to *Newfoundland*, the wind blowing at *S. E.* and by *E.* though there were several chances against them, as storms to overset and founder them, rains and cold to benumb and perish their limbs, and contrary winds to keep them out and starve them: But, said he, in this our great distress, we heard the welcome report of your guns, when, with unpeakable joy, taking down our masts and sails, we were resolved to lie by till morning; but perceiving your light, we set our oars at work to keep our boat a head, the sooner to attain your ship, the happy instrument of our deliverance.

Indeed no one can express the joy of these poor creatures on this occasion: Fear and grief are easily set forth: Sighs and tears, with a few motions of the hands and head, make up the sum of its variety: But an excess or surprize of joy carries in it a thousand extravagances; especially, I think, amongst the *French*, whose temper is allowed to be more volatile, passionate, sprightly and fluid, than in other kingdoms. Some were either weeping, tearing themselves in the greatest agonies of sorrow, and running stark raving mad about the ship; while the rest were stamping with their feet, wringing their hands, singing, laughing, swooning away, vomiting, fainting; and a few returning hearty thanks to the Almighty, and crossing themselves. I think, if I am not mistaken, our surgeon was obliged to let thirty of them blood. But among the passengers

there

there were two priests, the one an old, and the other a young man; but what amazed me more, the eldest was the worst: For, no sooner did he perceive himself freed from danger, but he dropped down as it were without life, and to every one's appearance, quite dead; but the surgeon, chafing and rubbing his arm, he opened a vein, which at first dropped, and then flowing more freely, the old man began to open his eyes, and in a quarter of an hour was well again. But soon revolving his happy change, the joy of which whirled his spirits about faster than the vessels could convey them, his blood became so feverish, as made him more fit for bedlam than any other place; but the surgeon giving him a sleepy dose, he was perfectly composed next morning.

Remarkable indeed was the behaviour of the young priest. At his entrance on board the ship, he fell on his face in the most humble prostration to the Almighty. I thought indeed he had fallen into a swoon, and to ran to help him up; but he modestly told me, he was returning his thanks to the Almighty, desiring me to leave him a few moments, and that, next to his Creator, he would return me thanks also. And indeed he did so about three minutes after, with great seriousness and affection, though the tears stood in his eyes, which confirmed the gratitude of his soul. Nor did he less shew his piety and wisdom, in applying himself to his country people, and labouring to compose them by the most powerful reasons, arguments, and persuasions. And when indeed these people had taken their night's repose, in such convenient lodgings as our ship would allow, we found nothing but the best of manners, and the most civil acknowledgments, for which the *French* are eminently remarkable. The next day the captain and one of the priests, desired to speak with me and my nephew the commander. They told us they had saved some money and valuable things out of the ruined vessel, which was at our service, only that they desired to be set on shore some where in our way. At the first, my nephew was for accepting the money; but I, (who knew how hard my case could have been, had the *Portuguese* captain served me so) persuaded him to the contrary; and therefore told them, that as we had done nothing but what we were obliged to do by reason and humanity, and what we ourselves might expect from others in such calamity; so we took them up to save them, not to plunder them or leave them naked upon the land, to perish for want of subsistence, and therefore would not accept their money: But as to landing them, that was a great difficulty; for being bound to the *East-Indies*, it was impossible wilfully to change our voyage upon this particular account, nor my nephew (who was under charter party to pursue it by way of *Brasil*) answer it to the freighters. All that we could do was, to put ourselves

selves in the way of meeting some ships homeward bound from the *West-Indies*, that if possible they might get a passage to *France* or *England*. Indeed they were very thankful for our first kindness; but were under great concern, especially their passengers, at their being carried to the *East Indies*. They begged therefore I would keep on the banks of *Newfoundland*, where probably they might meet with some ship or sloop to carry them to *Canada*, whence they came. As this was but a reasonable request, I was inclined to grant it, since it was no breach of charter party; and that the laws of God and nature obliged us to do what good we could to our fellow creatures; and besides, the danger we ourselves should be in for want of provisions: So we consented to carry them to *Newfoundland*, if wind and weather would permit; if not, that we should carry them to *Martinico* in the *West Indies*. But, as it happened, in a week's time, we made the banks of *Newfoundland*, where the *French* people hired a bark to carry them to *France*. But the young priest being desirous to go to the *East Indies*, I readily agreed to it, because I liked his conversation; and two or three of the *French* sailors also entered themselves on board our ship.

Now directing our course for the *West Indies*, steering *S.* and *S.* by *E.* about twenty days with little wind, another adventure happened to exercise our humanity. In the latitude of 27 degrees 5 m. north, the 19th of *March* 1694-5, we perceived a sail, (our course *S. E.* and by *S.*) which bore up to us, and then she appeared to be a large vessel, having lost her main topmast, fore mast, and bow sprit, when firing a gun, as a signal of distress, wind *N. N. W.* we soon came to speak with her. She was a ship of *Bristol*, bound home from *Barbadoes*, out of which road she had been forced by a hurricane to the westward, in which they lost their masts: They told us, their expectations were to see the *Bahama* Islands, but were driven away by a strong wind at *N. N. W.* and having no sails, to work the ship with, but the main course and a kind of square sail upon a jury fore mast, because they could come near the land, were endeavouring to stand for the *Canaries*. Nay, what was worse, besides all their fatigue, they were almost starved for want of provision, having ate nothing for eleven days; all that they had a board was sugar, a cask of fresh water, and seven casks of rum. In this ship were three passengers; a youth, his mother, and a maid servant, who were in a most deplorable condition for want of food. If I had not gone on board their ship, this knowledge of their misery had been concealed from me, and they would have inevitably perished, though indeed their second mate (who was captain, by reason the true captain was not on board when the hurricane happened) had before informed me, that there were such persons on board,

board, whom he supposed to be dead, being afraid to enquire after them, because he had nothing to give them for relief. Hereupon we resolved to let them have what we could spare, ordering the mate to bring some of his men on board us, which he accordingly did, yet both he and they looked like skeletons; and when meat was set before them, I ordered them to eat sparingly. But, however, they soon fell sick, which obliged the surgeon to mix something in their broth, that was to be to them both food and physic. When they were fed, we ordered our mate to carry them a sack of bread, and four or five pieces of beef to boil; but the surgeon charged them to see it boiled, and to keep a guard in the cook room, to prevent the men eating it raw, and consequently kill themselves with what was designed for their relief. But particularly I desired the mate to see what condition the poor passengers were in, and the surgeon gave him a pitcher of the same broth which he had prepared for the men: And being curious to see this scene of misery myself, I took the captain, (as we called the mate of the ship) in our own boat, and sailed after them.

Here was a sad sight indeed! Scarce was the victuals half boiled in the pot, but they were ready to break open the cook room door. To stay their stomachs, the mate gave them biscuits, which were dipt in, and softened with the liquor of the meat, which they call *Brevois*; telling them it was for their own safety, that he was obliged to give them but a little at a time; and so feeding them gradually, their bellies were comfortably filled, and the men did very well again. But when they came to the poor gentlewoman in the cabin, who for several days continued without food, giving what she had to her son, they found her as it were in the arms of death. She was sitting upon the floor of the deck, with her back up against the sides, between two chairs, which were lashed fast, and her head shrank between her shoulders, like a senseless corps. Nothing was wanting in my mate to revive and encourage her, opening her lips, and putting some broth into her mouth with a spoon. But not having strength to speak, she lifted up her head with much difficulty, intimating that it was now too late; at the same time pointing to the youth, her son, as though she desired him to do what he could to save him; and, in a little time after, she died.

The youth indeed was not so far gone; yet lay stretched out in a cabin bed like one that had scarce any life: In his mouth was a piece of an old glove, the rest of which he had ate up. At first he vomited up what the mate had given him; but at length began sensibly to revive, though in the greatest concern for the death of his tender mother.

As to the poor maid she lay by her mistress like one in the latest pangs of death: Her limbs were distorted, one of her

hands were clasped round the frame of a chair, which she grasped so hard, that it was with some difficulty we separated her from it; her other arm lay over her head, and her feet lay both together, set fast against the frame of the cabin table; not only being starved with hunger, but overcome with grief for the loss of her mistress, whom she loved most tenderly. It was a great while before the surgeon could bring her to life, and a much longer time before she came to her senses.

After we had sailed with them some days, we sent them five barrels of beef, one of pork, two hogheads of biscuit, with pease, flour, and other things, taking three casks of sugar, some rum, and some pieces of eight for satisfaction, we left them, but took the youth and maid with us, with all their goods. The lad was about 17 years old, very handsome, modest, sensible, and well bred, but mightily concerned for the loss of his honoured mother, having lost his father at *Barbadoes* but a few months before. He beseeched the surgeon to intercede with me to take him out of the ship; for that the sailors, not sparing a small sustenance, had murdered his mother. But hunger has no bounds, no right, and consequently is incapable of any compassion. When the surgeon told him that our voyage might put him in bad circumstances, and farther from his friends, he answered, he did not care so he was but delivered from that terrible crew: That as the captain (meaning me) had saved him from death, so he was sure that he would do him no harm; and as for the maid, when she was restored to her senses, she would be no less thankful, let us carry them where we would. And indeed the surgeon so represented their case to me, that I consented, and took them on board, with all their goods, except 11 hogheads of sugar; but the youth having a bill of lading, I made the commander sign a writing, to oblige him to deliver a letter and the deceased widow's goods to *Mr. Rogers*, a merchant at *Bristol*: But I believe the ship was lost at sea, for we could never hear what became of her afterwards. We were now in the latitude of 19 deg. 32 min. having as yet a tolerable good voyage. But, passing by several little incidents relative to wind and weather, I shall relate what is more remarkable concerning my little kingdom, to which I was then drawing near. I had great difficulty in attaining it; for as I came to, and went from it before, on the south and east of the island, as coming from the *Brazils*; so now approaching between the main and the island, not having any chart of the coast, nor land mark, it obliged us to go on shore on several islands, on the mouth of the great river *Oroonoko*, but to no purpose. Then I perceived, that what I thought was a continent before, was no such thing, but a long island, or rather a ridge of sand. On one of these islands, I found some *Spaniards*, but they belonged to the island  
of

of *Trinidad*, who came hither in a sloop to make salt, and find some pearl muscles, if they could. But at length I came fair on the south side of my island, and then I presently knew the countenance of my little kingdom; so we brought the ship safe to an anchor, with her broadside to the little creek, where stood my ancient and venerable castle.

No sooner did I see the place, but calling for *Friday*, I asked him where he was? But when he looked a little, he clapped his hands, crying, *O joy, O there, O yes, O there!* pointing to our old abode, and then fell a dancing and capering as if he was mad; and I had much ado to keep him from jumping into the sea, to swim ashore. *Friday*, said I, what do you think, shall we see your father? At the mentioning his father's name, the poor affectionate creature fell a weeping: *No no, (says he) me see him no more, never see poor father more! he long ago die, die long ago; he much old man.* You don't know that, *Friday*, said I, but shall we see any body else? He looks about, and pointing to the hill above my house, he cries out, *We see! we see! there much men, and there!* which though I could not perceive them with my perspective glass, was true, by what the men themselves told me the next day.

When the *English* ancient was spread, and three guns fired as a signal of friendship, we perceived a smoke rise from the creek; upon which I ordered the boat out, taking *Friday* with me, and, hanging out a white flag of truce, I went on shore, accompanied also by the young Friar, to whom I had related the history of the first part of my life. Besides, we had sixteen men well armed, in case we had met with any opposition.

After we had rowed directly into the creek, the first man I fixed my eyes upon was the *Spaniard*, whose life I had saved, and whose face I perfectly well knew. I ordered them all to stay in the boat for a while; but *Friday*, perceiving his father at a distance, would have jumped into the sea had they not let him go. No sooner was he on shore, but he flew like a swift arrow out of a bow, to embrace his ancient father. Certainly it would melt a man of the firmest resolution, into the softest tears, to see with what uncommon transports of joy he saluted him. He first kissed him, then stroked his face, took him in his arms, laid him under a shady tree, sat down by him, then looked as earnestly at him as one would do at a picture, for a quarter of an hour together. After this he would lie upon the ground, stroke his legs, and kiss them, then get up and stare at him as though he was bewitched: But the next day one could not forbear laughter, to see his behaviour; for he would walk several hours with his father along the shore, leading him by the hand as though he was a lady, while every now and then he would run to the boat to get something for him; as a lump of sugar, dram, biscuit, or something or other that

was good. His frolics ran in another channel in the afternoon; for, when he set old *Friday* on the ground, he would dance round him, making comical postures and gestures; and all this while would be telling him one story or other of his travels and adventures.

It was on the 10th of *April*, Anno 1695, that I set my foot upon the island a second time. When my faithful *Spaniard*, accompanied by one more, approached the boat. He little knew who I was, till I discovered myself to him: *Signior*, said I, in *Portuguese*, don't you know me? He spoke never a word; but, giving his musket to his attendant, extended his arms, and saying something in *Spanish* that I did not then understand, he came forward and embraced me; saying, he was inexcusable, not to know his deliverer, who, like an angel sent from heaven, had saved his life. He then beckoned to the man to call out his companions: asking me if I would walk to my own habitation, and take possession, where I should find some mean improvements; but indeed they were extraordinary ones; for they had planted so many trees, so close together, that the place was like a labyrinth, which none could find out except themselves, who knew its intricate windings. I asked him the meaning of all these fortifications; he told me, he would give me a large account of what had past since my departure to this time, and how he had subdued some *English* who thought to be their murderers, hoping I would not be displeas'd, since necessity compelled them to it. As I knew they were wicked villains, I told him, that I was not only far from finding fault with it, but was rather heartily glad they had subdued them. But while we were talking, the man whom he had sent returned, accompanied by eleven more; but in such habits, that it was impossible to tell what nations they were of. He first turned to me, pointing to them: These, Sir, said he, are some of the gentlemen who owe their lives to your goodness; and then turning to them, and pointing to me, he made them sensible who I was: And then indeed they saluted me one by one, not as ordinary men, but as though they had been ambassadors of noblemen, and I a triumphant conquerer: For their behaviour not only agreed with a manlike, majestic gravity, but, at the same time, was so obliging and courteous, as made them admirable to the last degree.

Before I relate the history of the transactions of my kingdom, as I had it from the *Spaniard's* own mouth, I must here insert what I omitted in my former relation. The matter is this: Just before we weigh'd anchor to set sail, there happen'd a quarrel on board the ship, which had like to have occasion'd a second mutiny, till such time as the courageous captain, taking two of the most refractory prisoners, he laid them in irons, threatening them, as they were concern'd in the form-



er disorders, to have them hanged in *England* for running away with the ship. This frightened some of the rest, as thinking the captain would serve them in the same manner, though he seemed to give them good words for the present. But the mate, having intelligence of this, made me acquainted with their fears; so that to make them more easy, and ourselves more safe from their conspiracies, I was obliged to go down, and pass my *Honour's* word for it, that, upon their good behaviour, all that was past should be pardoned; in testimony of which I ordered the two men's irons to be taken off, and themselves forgiven. But as this had brought us to an anchor that night, in which there was a calm, the two men that had been in irons, stole each of them a musket, and some other weapons, and taking the ship's pinnace, not yet hawled up, ran away to their brother rogues. The next morning we sent the long boat, with men to pursue them, but all in vain. The mate, in revenge, would have demolished my little castle, burnt its furniture, and destroyed their plantations; but having no orders for it, he did not put it in execution. And thus there were five *Englishmen* in the island, which caused great differences, as my faithful *Spaniard* gave me a perfect account of in the following manner:

You cannot, Sir, but remember the embassy you sent me about, and what a disappointment we met with, by your absence, at our return. There is but little variety in the relation of our voyage, being blest with calm weather and a smooth sea. Great indeed was the joy of my countrymen, on seeing me alive, having acted as the principal man on board, the captain of the shipwrecked vessel dying before; nor was their surprise less, who knowing I was taken prisoner by the savages of another nation, thought me long since entombed in their monstrous bowels. But, when I shewed them the arms, ammunition, and provision I had brought for them, they looked upon me as a second *Joseph* advanced in *Pharaoh's* court, and immediately prepared to come along with me. Indeed, they were obliged to trespass upon their friendly savages, by borrowing two of their canoes, under a pretext for fishing; and they came away the next morning, but without any provisions of their own, except a few roots, which served them instead of bread. After three week's absence, we arrived at our habitation. Here we met with three *English* sailors, who, I confess, gave us provisions, and that letter of directions you had left for us, which informed us, how to bring up tame goats, plant corn, cure grapes, make pots; and, in short, every thing that was necessary for our use; as I in particular, knew your method best, I took *Friday's* father to assist me, and so we managed all the affairs. Nor were the rest of the *Spaniards* wanting in their kind offices, dressing food for the *English-*

men, who did nothing but ramble and divert themselves in the woods, either shooting parrots, or catching tortoises. But we had not been long ashore, before we were informed of two more *Englishmen*, unnaturally turned out of their common place of residence, by the three others above mentioned: This made my *Spaniards* and me (whom they looked upon as their Governour, in your absence) endeavour to persuade them to take them in, that we might be as one family; but all our entreaties were in vain; so that the poor fellows, finding nothing to be done without industry, pitched their tents on the north side of the island, a little inclining to the west, for fear of savages. Here they built two huts, one to lodge, and the other to lay their stores in; for my good natured *Spaniards* giving them some seed, they dug and planted as I had done, and began to live prettily. But while they were going on thus comfortably, the three unnatural brutes, their countrymen, in a mere bullying humour, insulted them, by saying the Governour (meaning you) had given them possession of the island, and, damn them, they should build no houses upon their ground, without paying rent. The two honest men (for so let me now distinguish them) thought their three countrymen only jested, and one of them invited them in, to see their fine habitations; while the other facetiously told them, that since they built tenements, with great improvements, they should, according to the custom of landlords, give them a longer lease; at the same time desiring them to fetch a scrivener to draw the writings. One of the wretches, swearing he should pay for the jest, snatches up a fire brand, and clapping it to the outside of their hut, very fairly set it on fire, which soon would have been consumed, had not the honest man thrust him away, and trod it out with his feet. Hereupon the fellow returns with a pole, with which he would have ended his days, had not the poor man avoided the blow; when fetching his musket, he knocked the villain down that began the quarrel. The other two, coming to assist their fellow, obliged the other honest man to take his musket also, and both, presenting their pieces, bid the villains stand off; and if they did not lay down their arms, death should decide the dispute one way or other. This brought them to a parley, in which they agreed to take their wounded man, and be gone; but they were in the wrong that they did not disarm them when they had the power, and then make their complaint to me and my *Spaniards* for justice, which might have prevented their farther designs against them. And indeed so many trespasses did they commit after, by treading down their corn, shooting their young kids and goats, and plaguing them night and day, that they resolved to come to my castle, challenge all the three, and decide their rights by one plain battle, while the *Spaniards* stood by to see fair play. One day it hap-  
pened,

pened, that two of my *Spaniards* (one of whom understood *Engliſh*) being in the woods, were met by one of the honeſt men, who complained how barbarous their countrymen had been, in deſtroying their corn, killing their milch goat and three kids, which deprived them of their ſubſiſtence; that if we did not grant them relief, they muſt be inevitably ſtarved; and ſo they parted: But when my *Spaniards* came home at night, and ſupper being on the table, one of them began to reprehend the *Engliſhmen*, but in a very mannerly way; which they reſenting, replied, What buſineſs had their countrymen there without leave? and that it was none of their ground. Why, ſaid my *Spaniard* calmly, *Ingleſe* they muſt not ſtarve: But they replied, Let them ſtarve and be damned, they ſhould neither plant nor build; and damn them, they ſhould be their ſervants, and work for them; for the iſland was theirs, and they would burn all the huts they ſhould find on the land: By this rule (ſaid my *Spaniard* ſmiling) we ſhall be your ſervants too? Aye, by God, and ſo you ſhall, replied the impudent rascal. Upon which, *W. H. Atkins* ſtarting up, cries, come, *Jack*, lets have t'other brush with them; who dare build in our dominions? Thus, leaving us ſomething heated with a juſt paſſion, away they trooped, every man having a gun, piſtol, and ſword, muttering ſome threatening words, that we could then but imperfectly underſtand. That night they deſigned to murder their two companions, and ſlept till midnight in the bower, thinking to taſt upon them in their ſleep: Nor were the honeſt men leſs thoughtful concerning them; for at this juncture they were coming to find them out, but in a much fairer way. As ſoon as the villains came to the huts, and found nobody there, they concluded, that I and my *Spaniards* had given them notice, and therefore ſwore to be revenged on us. Then they demolished the poor men's habitation, not by fire, as they attempted before, but pulled down their houſes limb from limb, not leaving a ſtick nor ſtone on the ground where they ſtood; broke their houſhold ſtuff in pieces, tore up their trees, ſpoiled their encloure; and, in ſhort, quite ruined them of every thing they had. Had theſe people met together, no doubt but there would have been a bloody battle; but Providence ordered it for the better: For juſt as the three were got thither, the two were at our caſtle; and when they left us, the three came back again, ſcoffingly telling us what they had done; when one, taking hold of the *Spaniard's* hat, twirls it round, ſaying, *And you, Seignior Jack Spaniard, ſhall have the ſame ſauce, if you don't mend your manners.* My *Spaniard*, a grave, but a courageous man, knocked him down with one blow of his ſiſt; at which, another villain fired his piſtol, and narrowly miſſed his body, but wounded him a little in the ear. The *Spaniard*, enraged hereat, takes up the fellow's muſket  
whom

whom he had knocked down, and would have shot him, if I and the rest had not come out, and taken their arms from every one of them.

These *Englishmen*, perceiving they had made all of us their enemies, began to cool: but notwithstanding their better words, the *Spaniards* would not return them their arms again; telling them they would do no manner of harm, if they would live peaceably; but if they offered any injury to the plantation or castle, they would shoot them as they would do ravenous beasts. This made them so mad, that they went away raging like the furies of hell. They were no sooner gone, but in came the two honest men, fired with the justest rage, if such can be, having been ruined as aforesaid; and indeed it was very hard, that nineteen of us should be bullied by three villains, continually offending with impunity.

It was a great while, Sir, before we could persuade the two *Englishmen* from pursuing, and undoubtedly killing them with their fire arms; but we promised them justice should be done them, and in the mean time they should reside with us in our own habitation. In about five days after, these three vagrants, almost starved with hunger, drew near our grove; and perceiving me, the Governour, and two others, walking by the side of the creek, they very submissively desired to be received into the family again. We told them of their great incivility to us, and of their unnatural barbarity to their countrymen; but yet we would see what the rest agreed to, and would bring them word in half an hour. After some debate, we called them in, where their two countrymen laid a heavy charge against them, for not only ruining, but designing to murder them, which they could not deny. But here I was forced to interpose as a mediator; by obliging the two *Englishmen* not to hurt them, being naked and unarmed; and that the other three should make them restitution, by building their two huts, and fencing their ground in the same manner as it was before. Well, being in a miserable condition, they submitted to this at present, and lived some time regularly enough, except to the working part, which they did not care for; but the *Spaniards* would have dispensed with that, had they continued easy and quiet. Their arms being given to them again, they scarce had them a week, till they became as troublesome as ever; but an accident happening soon after, obliged us to lay aside private resentments, and look to our common preservation.

One night, Sir, I went to bed perfectly well in health, and yet by no means could I compose myself to sleep: Upon which, being very uneasy, I got up, and looked out, but it being dark, could perceive nothing but the trees around our castle: I went to bed again, but it was all one, I could not sleep; when

one of my *Spaniards* hearing me walk about, asked me, who is that up? I answered, 'tis I; when I told him the occasion; Sir, said he, such things are not to be slighted; for certainly there is some mischief plotting near us. Where are the *Englishmen*? said I. He answered, in their huts: for they lay separate from us, Sir, since the last mutiny. Well, said I, some kind spirit gives this information for our advantage. Come let us look abroad, and something may offer to justify our pains. Upon which I and some of my *Spaniards* went up to the mountain, not by the ladder, but through the grove; and then we were struck into a panic fear by seeing a light, as though it were a fire, at a very little distance, and hearing the voices of several men. Hereupon we retreated immediately, and raising the rest of our forces, made them sensible of the impending danger: But, with all my authority, I could not make them stay where they were, so earnest were they to see how things went; though indeed the darkness of the night gave them opportunity enough to view them (by the light of the fire) undiscovered. As they were different parties, and straggling over the shore, we were much afraid that they should find out our habitation, and destroy our flocks of goats: To prevent which, we sent one *Englishman* and two *Spaniards* to drive the goats into the valley where the cave lay; or, if there was occasion, into the cave itself. As to our own parts, resuming our native courage and prudent conduct, had they not been divided, we durst venture to attack an hundred of them. But before it was yet light, we resolved to send out *Friday's* father as a spy; who, immediately stripping himself naked, gets among them undiscovered, and in two hours time, brings word, that they were two parties, of two different nations, who, having lately a bloody battle with one another, happened to land by mere chance on the same island, to devour their miserable prisoners; that they were entirely ignorant of any person's inhabiting here; but rather, being filled with rage and fury against one another, he believed that as soon as daylight appeared, there would be a terrible engagement. Old *Friday* had scarce ended his relation, but we heard an uncommon noise, and perceived that there was an horrid engagement between the two armies.

Such was the curiosity of our party, especially the *Englishmen*, that they would not lie close, though Old *Friday* told them their safety depended upon it; and that if we had patience, we should behold the savages kill one another. However they used some caution, by going farther into the woods, and placing themselves in a convenient place to behold the battle.

Never could be a more bloody engagement, nor men of more invincible spirits and prudent conduct, according to their

their way and manner of fighting. It lasted near two hours, till that party which was nearest our castle began to decline, and at last to fly from their conquerors. We were undoubtedly, Sir, put into a great consternation on this account, lest they should run into our grove, and, consequently, bring us into the like danger. Hereupon we resolved to kill the first that came, to prevent discovery; and that too with our swords and the but end of our muskets, for fear the report of our guns should be heard.

And so indeed it happened as we thought; for three of the vanquished army crossing the creek, ran directly to the place, as to a thick wood for shelter; nor was it long before our scout gave us notice of it; as a so that the victors did not think it fit to pursue them. Upon this, I would not suffer them to be slain, but had them surpris'd and taken by our party; and afterwards they proved very good servants to us, being stout young creatures, and able to do a great deal of work. The remainder of the conquered savages fled to their canoes, and put out into the ocean; while the conquerors, joining together, shouted by way of triumph; and about three in the afternoon, they also embarked for their own nation. Thus we were freed at once, from the savages and our fears, not perceiving any of these creatures for some considerable time after. We found two and thirty men dead in the field of battle; some were slain with long arrows, which we found sticking in their bodies; and the rest were killed with large unwieldy wooden swords, which denoted their vast strength; and of which we found seventeen, besides bows and arrows: But we could not find one wounded creature among them alive; for they either kill their enemies quite, or carry those wounded away with them.

This terrible fight tamed the *Englishmen* for some time; considering how unfortunate they might have been, had they fallen into their hands, who would not only kill them as enemies, but also for food, as we do cattle: And, indeed, so much did this nauseate their stomachs, that it not only made them very sick, but more tractable to the common necessary business of the whole society, planting, sowing, and reaping, with the greatest signs of amity and friendship: So that now, being all good friends, we began to consider of circumstances in general; and the first thing we thought of was, Whether, as we perceived the savages haunted that side of the island, and there being more retired parts of it, and yet as well suited to our manner of living, and equally to our advantage, we ought not much rather to move our place of residence, and plant it in a much safer place, both for the security of our corn and cattle?

After

After a long debate on this head, it was resolved, or rather voted, *nemine contradicente*, not to remove our ancient castle; and that for this very good reason, that some time or other we expected to hear from our supreme Governor (meaning you, Sir) whose messengers, not finding us there, might think the place demolished, and all his subjects destroyed by the savages.

As to the next concern relating to our corn and cattle, we consented to have them removed to the valley where the cave was, the land there being properest, and sufficient for both. But yet when we considered further, we altered one part of our resolution, which was to remove part of our cattle thither, and there plant only part of our corn; so that in case one part was destroyed, the other might be preserved. We took another resolution, which really had a great deal of prudence in it, and that was, in not trusting the three savages which we had taken prisoners, with any knowledge of the plantation we had made in that valley, or of what number of cattle, much less the cave, wherein we conveyed several arms, and two barrels of powder you left for us, at your departure from this island. But though we could not change our habitation, we resolved to make it more fortified and more secret. To this end, Sir, as you had planted trees at some distance before the entrance of your palace, so we, imitating your example, planted and filled up the whole space of ground, even to the banks of the creek, nay, into the very ouze where the tide flowed, not leaving a place for landing: And among those you had planted, we also intermingled so many short ones, all of which growing wonderfully fast and thick, scarce a little dog could find the way through them. Nor was this sufficient, as we thought, for we did the same to all the ground to the right and left of us, even to the top of the hill, without so much as a passage for ourselves, except by the ladder; which being taken down, nothing but what had wings, or witchcraft, could pretend to come near us. And indeed this was excellently well contrived, especially to serve that occasion, for which we afterwards found it necessary.

Thus we lived two years in a happy retirement, not having one visit from the savages all that time. Indeed one morning we had an alarm, which put us into some amazement; for a few of my *Spaniards* being out very early, perceived no less than twenty canoes as it were, coming on shore: upon which, returning home with great precipitation, they gave us the alarm, which obliged us to keep at home all that day, and the next, going out only in the night time to make our observations: But, as good luck would have it, they were upon another design, and did not land that time upon the island.

But

But now there happened another quarrel between the three wicked *Englishmen*, and some of my *Spaniards*. The occasion was this: One of them being enraged at one of the savages, whom we had taken prisoner, for not being able to comprehend something which he was shewing him, he snatches up a hatchet in a great fury, not to correct, but to kill him; but missing his head, he gave him such a barbarous cut in his shoulder, that had like to have struck off his arm; at which one of my good natured *Spaniards*, interposing between the *Englishman* and the poor savage, beseeched the former not to murder the poor creature: But this kindness had like to have cost the *Spaniard's* life; for the *Englishman* struck at him in the same manner, which he nimbly and suddenly avoiding, returned suddenly upon him with his shovel, (being all at work about their corn land) and very fairly knocked the brutish creature down. Hereupon another *Englishman*, coming to his fellow's assistance, laid the good *Spaniard* on the earth; when immediately two others, coming to his relief, were attacked by the third *Englishman*, armed with an old cutlass, who wounded them both. But this uproar soon reached our ears, who rushing out upon them, took the three *Englishmen* prisoners: And then, our next question was, what should be done to such mutinous and impudent fellows, so furious, desperate and idle, that they were mischievous to the highest degree, and consequently not safe for the society to let them live among them.

Now, Sir, as I was Governour in your absence, so I also took the authority of a Judge, and having them brought before me, I told them, That if they had been of my country, I would hang every mother's son of them; but since it was an *Englishman* (meaning you, kind Sir,) to whom we were indebted for our preservation and deliverance, I would, in gratitude, use them with all possible mildness; but, at the same time, leave them to the judgment of the two other *Englishmen*, who, I hoped, forgetting their resentments, would deal impartially by them.

Hereupon one of their countrymen stood up: Sir, said he, leave it not to us, for you may be sensible we have reason to sentence them to the gallows: Besides, Sir, this fellow, Will Atkins, and the two others, proposed to us, that we might murder you all in your sleep, which we would not consent to; but knowing their inability, and your vigilance, we did not think fit to discover it before.

How, Seignior, said I, do you hear what is alleged against you? What can you say to justify so horrid an action as to murder us in cold blood? So far, Sir, was the wretch from denying it, that he swore, Damn him but he would do it still. But what have we done to you, Seignior Atkins, said I, or what



what will you gain by killing us? What shall we do to prevent you? Must we kill you, or you kill us? Why will you Seignior *Atkins* (said I, smiling) put us to such an unhappy *dilemma*, such a fatal necessity? But so great a rage did my scoffing, and yet severe jest put him into, that he was going to fly at me, and undoubtedly had attempted to kill me, if possessed of weapons, and had not been prevented by three *Spaniards*. This unparalleled and villainous carriage made us seriously consider what was to be done. The two *Englishmen* and the *Spaniard*, who had saved the poor *Indian's* life, mightily petitioned me to hang one of them, for an example to the others, which should be him that had twice attempted to commit murder with his hatchet, it being at that time thought impossible the poor slave should recover. But they could never gain my consent to put him to death, for the reasons above mentioned, since it was an *Englishman* (even yourself) was my deliverer: And, as merciful counsels are most prevailing, when earnestly pressed, so I got them to be of the same opinion, as to clemency. But to prevent them doing us any future mischief, we all agreed that they should have no weapons, as swords, guns, powder or shot, but be expelled from the society, to live how they pleased by themselves: That neither the two *Englishmen*, nor the rest of the *Spaniards*, should have conversation with them upon any account whatsoever: That they should be kept from coming within certain limits of our castle; and if they dared to offer us any violence, either by spoiling, burning, killing or destroying any of the corn, plantains, buildings, fences, or cattle, belonging to the society, we would shoot them as freely as we would do beasts of prey, in whatsoever places we should perceive them.

This sentence seemed very just to all but themselves; when, like a merciful Judge, I called out to the two honest *Englishmen*, saying, you must consider they ought not to be starved neither; and since it will be some time before they can raise corn or cattle of their own, let us give them some corn to last them eight months, and for seed to sow, by which time they will raise some for themselves. Let us also bestow upon them six milch goats, four he ones, and six kids, as well for their present support, as a farther increase: together with tools necessary for their work; as hatchets, an axe, saw, and other things convenient to build them huts: All which were agreed to; but before they took them in possession, I obliged them solemnly to swear, never to attempt any thing against us or their countrymen for the future. Thus dismissing them from our society, they went away, sullen and refractory, as though neither willing to go nor stay: However, seeing no remedy, they took what provision was given them, pretending to chuse a convenient place, where they might live by themselves.

About five days after, they came to those limits appointed, in order for more victuals, and sent me word by one of my *Spaniards*, whom they called to, where they had pitched their tents, and marked themselves out an habitation and plantation, at the *N. E.* and most remote part of the island. And indeed there they built themselves two very handsome cottages, resembling our little castle, being under the side of a mountain, with some trees already growing on three sides of it; so that planting a few more, it would have been obscured from sight, unless particularly sought for. When these huts were finished, we gave them some dry goats' skins for bedding and covering; and, on their giving us fuller sureties of their good behaviour for the future, we gave them some peas, barley, and rice for sowing, and whatever tools we could spare.

Six months did they live in this separate condition, in which they got their first harvest in, the quantity of which was but small, because they had planted but little land: For indeed, all their plantations being to form, made it the more difficult, especially it being a thing out of their element. And when they were obliged to make their boards and pots, &c. they could make little or nothing of it. But the rainy season coming on, put them into a greater perplexity, for want of a cave to keep their corn dry, and prevent it from spoiling: And so much did this humble them, that they begged of my *Spaniards* to help them, to which the good natured men readily consented, and in four days space worked a great hole in the side of the hill for them, large enough for their purpose, to secure their corn and other things from the rain, though not comparable to our's, which had several additional apartments.

But a new whim possessed these rogues about three quarters of a year afterwards, which had like to have ruined us, and themselves too: For it seems, being tired and weary of this sort of living, which made them work themselves, without hopes of changing their condition, nothing would serve them, but they would make a voyage to the continent, and try if they could not seize upon some of the savages, and bring them over, as slaves to do their drudgery, while they lived at ease and pleasure.

Indeed the project was not so preposterous, if they had not gone farther; but they neither did, or proposed any thing, but what had mischief in the design, or the event. One morning these three fellows came down to the limited station, and humbly desired to be admitted to talk with us, which we readily granted. They told us, in short, that being tired of their manner of living, the labour of their hands, in such employments, not being sufficient to procure the necessaries of life, they only desired one of the canoes we came over in, with some arms and ammunition, for their defence, and they would seek

seek their fortunes abroad, and never trouble us any more. To be sure, we were glad enough to get rid of such wretched plagues; but yet honestly made us ingenuously represent to them, by what we ourselves had suffered, the certain destruction they were running into, either of being starved to death or murdered by the savages. To this they very audaciously replied, that they neither could or would work; and consequently, that they might as well be starved abroad as at home: And as to their falling into the hands of the savages; why, if they were murdered, that was nothing to us, there was an end of them; they had neither wives nor children to cry after them: Nay, so intent were they upon their voyage, that if the *Spaniards* would not give them arms, so they had but the canoe, they would go without.

But though we could not well spare our fire arms, rather than they should go like naked men, we let them have two muskets, a pistol, a cutlass, and three hatchets, which were thought very sufficient: We gave them also goats' flesh, a great basket full of dried grapes, a pot of fresh butter, a young live kid, and a large canoe sufficient to carry twenty men. And thus, with a mast made of a long pole, and a sail of six large goat skins dried, having a fair breeze, and a flood tide with them, they sailed merrily away, the *Spaniards* calling after them, *Bon Veyajoja*, no man ever expecting to see them again.

When they were gone, the *Spaniards* and *Englishmen* would often say one to another, *O how peaceably do we now live since those turbulent fellows have left us!* Nothing could be farther from their thoughts than to behold their faces any more; and yet scarce two and twenty days had passed over their heads, but one of the *Englishmen*, being abroad a planting, perceived at a distance, three men well armed, approaching towards him. Away he flies with speed to our castle, and tells me and the rest, that we were all undone, for that strangers were landed on the island, and who they were he could not tell, but added, that they were not savages, but men habited, bearing arms. Why then, said I, we have the less occasion to be concerned, since, if they are not *Indians*, they must be friends; and I am sure there is no Christian people upon earth, but what will do us good rather than harm. But while we were considering of the event, up came the three *Englishmen*, whose voices we quickly knew, and so all our admiration of that nature ceased at once. And our wonder was succeeded by another sort of enquiry, which was, What could be the occasion of their returning so quickly to the island, when we little expected, and much less desired their company? But, as this was better to be related by themselves, I ordered them to be brought in, and they gave me the following relation of their voyage.

After

After two days sail, or something less, they reached land, where they found the people coming to give them another sort of reception, than what they expected or desired; for being armed with bows and arrows, they durst not venture on shore, but steered northward six or seven hours, till they attained to an opening, by which they plainly perceived, that the land that appeared from this place, was not the main, but an island; that at their entrance into the opening of the sea, they discovered another island, on the right hand north, and several more lying to the westward; but being resolved to go on shore somewhere or other, they put over to one of the western islands. Here they found the natives very courteous to them, giving them several roots and dried fish; nay, even the women too, were as willing to supply them with what they could procure them to eat, bringing it a great way to them upon their heads. Among those hospitable *Indians* they continued some days, enquiring, by signs and tokens, what nations lay around them; and were informed, that there were several fierce and terrible people lived every way, accustomed to eat mankind; but, for themselves, they never used such diet, except those who were taken in battle, and of them they made a solemn feast.

The *Englishmen* enquired, how long it was since they had a feast of that kind; they answered about two moons ago, pointing to the moon, and then to two fingers; that at this time their king had two hundred prisoners, which were fattening up for the slaughter. Mighty desirous were the *Englishmen* for seeing the prisoners, which the others mistaking, thought that they wanted some of them for their own food: Upon which they beckoned to them, pointing to the rising, and then to the setting of the sun; that when it appeared in the east the next morning, they would bring them some: And indeed they were as good as their words, for by that time they brought eleven men and five women, just as so many cows and oxen are brought to sea port towns, to victual a ship. But as brutish as these *Englishmen* were, their stomachs turned at the sight. What to do in this case they could not tell: To refuse the prisoners, would have been the highest affront offered to the savage gentry; and to dispose of them, they knew not in what manner. However, they resolved to accept them; and so gave them in return, one of their hatchets, an old key, a knife, and six or seven of their bullets; things which though wholly ignorant of, they seemed entirely contented with; and dragging the poor wretches into the boat, with their hands bound behind them, delivered them to the *Englishmen*. But this obliged them to put off as soon as they had these presents, lest the donors might have expected two or three of them to be killed, and to be invited to dinner the next day: and so taking leave, with all possible respect and thanks, though neither of them understood

understood what they could say, they sailed away back to the first island, and there set eight of the men prisoners at liberty. In their voyage, they endeavoured to comfort, and have some communication with the poor captives; but it was impossible to make them sensible of any thing; and nothing they could say, or give, or do for them, could make them otherwise persuaded, but that they were unbound only to be devoured. If they gave them any food, they thought it was only to fatten them for the slaughter; or looked at any one more particularly, the poor creature thought itself to be the first sacrifice: And even when they brought them to our island, and began to use them with the greatest humanity and kindness; yet they expected every day their new masters would devour them.

And thus, Sir, did these three strange wanderers conclude the unaccountable relation of their voyage, which was both amazing and entertaining. Hereupon I asked them where their new family was? They told me, they had put them into one of their huts, and they came to beg some victuals for them. This, indeed, made us long to see them; and so, taking *Friday's* father with us, leaving only two at our castle, we came down to behold these poor creatures.

When we arrived at the hut (being bound again by the *Englishmen*, for fear of escaping) there they all sat, stark naked, expecting their fatal tragedy: There were three lusty comely men, well shaped, with strait and fair limbs, between thirty and five and thirty years old; and five women, two of whom might be from thirty to forty, two more not above four and twenty; and the last, a comely tall maiden of about seventeen. Indeed all the women were very agreeable, both in their proportion and features, except being tawny, which their modest behaviour and other graces made amends for, when they afterwards came to be clothed.

Their naked appearance, together with their miserable circumstances, was no very comfortable sight to my *Spaniards*, who, for their parts, I may venture, Sir, without flattery, to say, are men of the best behaviour, calmest tempers, and sweetest natures, that can possibly be: For they immediately ordered *Friday's* father to see if he knew any of them, or if he understood what they could say. No sooner did the old *Indian* appear, but he looked at them with great seriousness; yet, not being of his nation, they were utter strangers to him, and none could understand his speech, or signs, but one woman. This was enough to answer the design, which was, to assure them they would not be killed being fallen into the hands of Christians, who abhorred such barbarity. When they were fully satisfied of this, they expressed their joy by such strange gestures, and uncommon tones, as are not possible for me to describe. But the woman, their interpreter, was ordered next to

enquire, whether they were content to be servants, and would work for the men who had brought them thither to save their lives? Hereupon (being by this time unbound) they fell a capering and dancing, one taking this thing upon her shoulders, and t'other that, intimating that they were willing to do any thing for them. But now, Sir, having women among us, and dreading that it might occasion some strife, if not blood, I asked the three men what they would do, and how they intended to use these creatures, whether as servants or women? One of them very pertly and readily answered, they would use them as both. Gentlemen, said I, as you are your own masters, I am not going to restrain you from that; but methinks, for avoiding dissensions among you, I would only desire you to engage, That none of you will take more than one for a woman or a wife; and that having taken this one, none else should presume to touch her; for though we have not a priestly authority to marry you, yet it is but reasonable, that whoever thus takes a woman, should be obliged to maintain her; since nobody else has any thing to do with her: And this indeed appeared so just to all present, that it was unanimously agreed to. Then the *Englishmen* asked my *Spaniards*, whether they designed to take any of them? But they all answered no, some declaring, they had already wives in *Spain*, and others, that they cared not to join with infidels. On the reverse, the *Englishmen* took each of them a temporary wife, and set up a new method of living. As to *Friday's* father, the *Spaniards*, and the three savage servants we had taken in the late battle, they all lived with me in our ancient castle; and indeed we supplied the main part of the island with food, as necessity required. But the most remarkable part of the story is, how these *Englishmen*, who had been so much at variance, should agree about the choice of these women; yet they took a good way enough to prevent quarrelling among themselves. They set the five women in one of their huts, and going themselves to the other, drew lots which should have the first choice. Now he that had the first went to the hut, and fetched out her he chose; and it is remarkable, that he that chose first, took her that was accounted the most homely, and eldest of the number, which made the rest of the *Englishmen* exceeding merry, and the *Spaniards* themselves could not but smile at it: But, as it happened, the fellow had the best thought, in chusing one fit for application and business; and indeed she proved the best wife of all the parcel.

But, when the poor creatures perceived themselves placed in a row, and separated one by one, they were again seized with an unspeakable terror, as thinking they were now going to be slain in earnest: And when the *Englishman* came to take the first, the rest set up a lamentable cry, clapt their arms around her

her neck, and hanging about her, took their last farewell, as they thought, in such trembling agonies, and affectionate embraces, as would have softened the hardest heart in the world, and made the driest eyes melt into watery tears: Nor could they be persuaded, but that they were going to die, till such time as *Friday's* father made them sensible, that the *Englishmen* had chosen them for their wives; and so ended all their terror and concern upon this occasion.

Well, after this, the *Englishmen* went to work, and, being assisted by my good natured savages, in a few hours they erected every one of them a new hut or tent, for their separate lodging, since those they had already were filled with tools, household stuff and provision. They all continued on the north shore of the island, but separate as before; the three wicked ones pitched farther off, and the two honest men nearer hand to our castle: So that the island seemed to be peopled in three places, three towns beginning to be built for that purpose. And here I cannot but remark, what is very common, that the two honest men had the worst wives (I mean as to industry, cleanliness and ingenuity) while the three reprobates enjoyed women of the contrary perfections.

But another observation I made is in favour of the two honest men, to shew what disparity there is between a diligent application to business, on the one hand, and a slothful, negligent, and idle temper, on the other. Both of them had an equal parcel of ground laid out, and corn to sow sufficient for them; but both did not make the same improvements, either in their cultivation or in their planting. The two honest men had a multitude of young trees planted about their habitations, so that when you approached near them, nothing appeared but a wood, very pleasing and delightful. Every thing they did prospered and flourished; their grapes, planted in order, seemed as though managed in a vineyard, and were infinitely preferable to any of the others. Nor were they wanting to find out a place of retreat; but dug a cave in the most retired part of a thick wood to secure their wives and children, with their provision and chiefest goods, surrounded with innumerable stakes, and had the most subtle entrance, in case any mischief should happen, either by their fellow countrymen, or the devouring savages.

As to the reprobates (though I must own they were much more civilized than before) instead of a delightful wood surrounding their dwellings, we found the words of King *Solomon* too truly verified: *I went by the vineyard of the slothful, and it was overgrown with thorns.* In many places their crop was obscured by weeds; the hedges, having several gaps in them, the wild goats had got in and eaten up the corn; and here and there was a dead bush, to stop in those gaps for the present,  
which

which was no more than shutting the stable door after the steed was stolen away. But for their wives, they (as I observed before) were more diligent, and cleanly enough, especially in their victuals, being instructed by one of the honest men, who was a cook's mate on board a ship: And very well it was so, for, cooking himself, his companion and their families lived as well as the idle husbands, who did nothing but loiter about, fetch turtles eggs, catch fish and birds, and any thing but work, and they lived accordingly; while the diligent lived very handsomely and plentifully, in the most comfortable manner.

And now, Sir, I am come to lay before your eyes a scene, quite different from any thing that ever happened to us before; and, perhaps, ever befel you in all the time of your residence on this island: I shall inform you of its original in the following manner.

One morning, Sir, very early, there came five or six canoes of *Indians* on shore, indisputably upon their old custom of devouring their prisoners. All that we could do upon such an occasion, was to lie concealed; and they not having any notice of the inhabitants, would depart quietly, after performing their bloody execution. Whoever discovered these savages first was to give notice to all the three plantations, to keep within doors; and then proper scout was to be placed, to give us intelligence of their departure. But notwithstanding these wise measures, an unhappy disaster exposed us to the knowledge of the savages, which had like to have caused the desolation of the whole island: For after the savages were gone off in their canoes, some of my *Spaniards* and I, looking abroad, and enflamed with a curiosity to see what they had been doing here, to our great amazement, we beheld three savages fast asleep on the ground, who either being gorged, could not awake when the others went; or, having wandered too far into the woods, did not come back in time.

What to do with them at first we could not tell: As for slaves we had enough of them already; and as to killing them, neither christianity, nor humanity, would suffer us to shed innocent blood, who never did us wrong, and therefore had no just quarrel against them, to justify our taking their lives away. We perceived they had no boat left them to transport them to their own nation; and that, by letting them wander about, they might discover us, and inform the first savages that should happen to land on this bloody occasion; which information might entirely ruin us; and therefore I counselled my *Spaniards* to secure them, and let them about some work or other till we could better dispose of them.

Hereupon we all went back, and making them awake, took them prisoners. It is impossible to express the horror they were in, especially when bound, as thinking they were going



to be murdered and eaten ; but we soon eased them of their fear as to that point. We first took them to the bower, where was the chief of our country work ; as keeping goats, planting corn, &c. and then carried them to the two *Englishmen's* habitation, to help them in their business : But happy it was for us all, we did not carry them to our castle, as will appear by the sequel. The *Englishmen* indeed found them work to do ; but, whether they did not guard them strictly, or that they thought they could not better themselves, I cannot tell ; but certainly one of them ran away into the woods, and they could not hear of him for a long time after.

Undoubtedly there was reason enough to suppose he got home in some of the canoes, the savages returning in about four week's time, and going off in the space of two days. You may be certain, Sir, this thought could not but terrify us exceedingly ; and made us justly conclude, that this savage would inform his countrymen of our abode in the island, how few and weak we were in comparison to their numbers ; expecting it would not be long before the *Englishmen* would be attacked in their habitations ; but the savages had not seen their places of safety in the wood, nor our castle, which it was a great happiness they did not know.

Nor were we mistaken in our thoughts upon this occasion : for about eight months after this, six canoes of savages, with about ten men in each canoe, came sailing by the north side of the island, which they were never accustomed to do before, and landed about an hour after sun rise, near a mile from the dwelling of the two *Englishmen*, who, it seems, had the good fortune to discover them about a league off ; so it was about an hour before they could attain the shore, and it required some longer time before they could come at them. And being now confirmed in this opinion, that they were certainly betrayed, they immediately bound the two slaves which were left, causing two of the three men, whom they had brought with the women, and who proved very faithful, to lead them with their wives, and other conveniencies, into their retired cave in the wood, and there to bind the two fellows hand and foot till they had further orders. Then they opened their fences where they kept their milch goats, and drove them all out, giving the goats liberty to wander in the woods, to amuse the savages that they were wild ones ; but the slave had given a truer information, which made them come to their very inclosures. The two frightened men sent the other slave of the three, who had been with them by accident, to alarm the *Spaniards*, and desire their assistance ; in the mean time they took their arms and ammunition, and made to the cave where they had sent their wives, and securing their slaves, seated themselves in a private place, from whence they might behold  
all

all the actions of the savages. Nor had they gone far, and ascending a rising ground, but they could see a little army of *Indians* approach to their beautiful dwelling; and, in a few moments more, perceived the same, and their furniture, to their unspeakable grief, burning in a consuming flame: And when this was done, they spread here and there, searching every bush and place for the people, of whom it was evident they had information. Upon which the two *Englishmen* not thinking themselves secure where they stood, retreated about half a mile farther into the country, rightly concluding that the farther the savages strolled, there would be the less number together: Upon which they took their next stand where the trunk of an old tree stood, very hollow and large, where they resolved to see what would offer. But they had not stood long there, before two savages came running directly towards them, as though having knowledge of their being there, they resolved to attack them. A little farther were three more, and five more behind them again, all running the same way. It cannot be imagined what perplexity the poor men were in at this sight, thinking that, if assistance did not speedily come, their cave would be discovered in the wood, and consequently all therein lost. So they resolved to resist them there; and, when overpowered, would ascend to the top of the trees, where they would defend themselves as long as their ammunition lasted, and sell their lives as dear as possible to those devouring savages. Thus fixed upon their resolution, they next considered whether they should fire at the first two, or wait for the three, and so take the middle party, by which the two first and the five last would be separated. In this regulation the two savages also confirmed them, by turning a little to the other part of the wood; but the three, and the five after them, came directly towards the tree. Hereupon they resolved to take them in a direct line as they approached nearer, because the first shot might perhaps hit them all three; and upon this occasion, the man who was to fire charged his piece with three or four bullets. And thus, while they were waiting, the savages came on: one of them was the run-away, who had caused all their mischief, so they resolved he should not escape, if they both fired at once. But however, though they did not fire together, they were ready charged; when the first that let fly was too good a marksman to miss his aim; for he killed the foremost outright; the second, who was the run away *Indian* fell on the ground, being shot through the body, but not dead; and the third was a little wounded on the shoulder, who sitting down on the ground, fell a screaming in a most fearful manner. The noise of the guns, which not only made the most relounding echoes, from one side to another, but raised the birds of all

sorts, fluttering with the most confused noise, so much terrified the five savages behind, that they stood still at first like so many inanimate images. But when every thing was in its first profound silence, they came to the place where their companions lay in a miserable condition : And here, not being sensible that they were liable to the same fate, they stood over the wounded man, undoubtedly enquiring the cause of his sad calamity ; and, as 'tis reasonable to suppose, he told them that it came by lightning and thunder from the gods, having never seen or heard of a gun before, in the whole course of their lives. By this time the *Englishmen* having loaded their pieces, fired both together a second time, when, seeing them all fall immediately upon the ground, they thought they had killed every creature of them. This made them come up boldly before they had charged their guns, which indeed was a wrong step ; for, when they came to the place, they found four alive, two of them a very little wounded and one, not at all, which obliged them to fall upon them with their muskets : They first knocked the run away savage on the head, and another that was but a little wounded in the arm, and then put the other languishing wretches out of their pain ; while he that was not hurt, with bended knees, and lift up hands, made piteous moans and signs to them to spare his life : Nor were they indeed unmerciful to the poor wretch, but pointed to him to sit down at the root of a tree hard by, and then one of the *Englishmen*, with a piece of rope twine he had in his pocket by mere chance, tying his two feet fast together, and his two hands behind him, there they left him, making all the haste they could after the other two, fearing they should find out their cave ; but though they could not overtake them, yet they had the satisfaction to perceive them, at a distance cross over a valley towards the sea, a quite contrary way to their retreat : Upon which they very contentedly returned to the tree, to look after their prisoner ; but when they came there he was gone, leaving the pieces of rope-yarn wherewith he was bound, behind him.

Well, now they were as much concerned as ever, not knowing how near their enemies might be, or in what numbers : Immediately they repaired to their cave, to see if all were well there, and found every thing safe, except the women who were frightened upon their husbands' account, whom they now loved entirely. They had not been long here, before seven of my *Spaniards* came to assist them ; while the other ten, their servants, and *Friday's* father, were gone to defend their bower, corn and cattle, in case the savages should have rambled so far. There accompanied the seven *Spaniards* one of the three savages, that had formerly been taken prisoner ; and, with them also, that very *Indian* whom the *Englishmen* had a little before, left under the tree ; for it seems they passed by  
that

that way where the slaughter was made, so carried along with them that poor wretch that was left bound. But so many prisoners now becoming a burthen to us, and fearing the dreadful consequence of their escaping, most of the *Spaniards* and *English* urged the absolute necessity there was for killing them, for our common preservation : But, Sir, the authority I bore as Governour overswayed that piece of cruelty ; and then I ordered them to be sent prisoners to the old cave in the valley, bound hands and feet, with two *Spaniards* to guard them.

So much encouraged were the *Englishmen*, at the approach of the *Spaniards*, and so great was their fury against the savages, for destroying their habitations, that they had not patience to stay any longer ; but taking five *Spaniards* along with them, armed with four muskets, a pistol, and a quarter staff, away they went in pursuit of their enemies. As they passed by the place where the savages were slain, it was very easy to be perceived that more of them had been there, having attempted to carry off their dead bodies, but found it impracticable. From a rising ground our party had the mortification to see the smoke that proceeded from the ruins ; when, coming farther in sight of the shore, they plainly perceived that the savages had embarked in their canoes, and were putting out to sea. This they were very sorry for, there being no coming at them, to give them a parting salutation : But, however, they were glad enough to get rid of such unwelcome guests.

Thus the two honest, but unfortunate *Englishmen*, being ruined a second time, and their improvements quite destroyed, most of my good natured *Spaniards* helped them to re-build, and we all helped them with needful supplies : Nay, what is more remarkable, their three mischievous countrymen, when they heard it (which was after all these disasters were over, they living remote eastward) sympathized with them in a very friendly manner, and worked for them several days ; so that in a little time their habitation was rebuilt, their necessities supplied, and themselves restored to their former tranquillity.

The savages had nothing to boast of in this adventure, several canoes being driven ashore, followed by two drowned creatures, having undoubtedly met with a storm at sea, that very night they departed. Nor can it be supposed otherwise, but those, whose better fortune it was to attain their native shore, would enflame their nation to another ruinous attempt, with a greater force to carry all before them. And indeed so it happened ; for about seven months after, our island was invaded with a most formidable navy ; no less than eight and twenty canoes full of savages, armed with wooden swords, monstrous clubs, bows and arrows, and such like instruments of war, landed that evening at the eastmost side of the island.

You

You may well imagine, Sir, what consternation our men were in upon this account, and how speedy they were to execute their resolution, having only that night's time allowed them. They knew that since they could not withstand their enemies, concealment was the only way to procure their safety: And therefore they took down the huts that were built for the two *Englishmen*, and drove their flock of goats together with their own at the bower, to the old cave in the valley; they left as little appearance of inhabitants as possible, and then posted themselves with all their force, at the plantation of the two men. As they expected, so it happened; for early the next morning the *Indians*, leaving their canoes at the east end of the island, came running along the shore, about two hundred and fifty in number, as near as can be guessed. Our army was but little indeed; and, what was our greater misfortune, we had not arms sufficient for them: The account, as to the men, Sir, is as follows:

17 Spaniards.	} To arm these, they had	11 Muskets.
5 Englishmen.		5 Pistols.
1 Old Friday.		3 Fowling Pieces.
3 The three savages, taken with the women, who proved faithful servants.		2 Swords.
3 Other slaves living with the Spaniards.		3 Old Halberts.
		5 Muskets, or fowling pieces, taken from the sailors, whom you reduced.

As to our slaves, we gave three of them halberts, and the other three long staves, with great iron spikes at the end of them, with hatchets by their sides: We also had hatchets too, sticking in our girdles, besides the fire arms: Nay, two of the women, inspired with *Amazonian* fortitude, could not be dissuaded from fighting along with their dearest husbands, and if they died, to die with them. Seeing their resolution, we gave them hatchets likewise; but what pleased them best, were the bows and arrows (which they dexterously knew the use of) that the *Indians* had left behind them, after their memorable battle, one against another.

This was my little army, but of great intrepidity, over which I was chief general and commander; and knowing *Will Atkins*, though exceedingly wicked, yet a man of invincible courage, I gave him the power of commanding under me: He and six men, with their muskets loaded with six or seven bullets a piece, were planted just behind a small thicket of bushes, as an advanced guard, having orders to let the first pass by; and then, when we fired into the middle of them, make a nimble retreat round part of the wood, and so come

in the rear of the *Spaniards*, who were shaded by a thicket of trees. Though the savages came on with the fierceness of lions, yet they wanted the subtilty of foxes, being out of all manner of order, and straggling in heaps every way: And when *Will. Atkins*, after fifty of the savages had passed by, had ordered three of his men to give fire, so great was their consternation, to see so many men killed and wounded, and hear such a dreadful noise, and yet not know whence it came, that they were frightened to the highest degree; and when the second volley was given, they concluded no less but their companions were slain by thunder and lightning from heaven. And in this notion they would have continued, had *Will. Atkins* and his men retired as soon as they fired, according to order, or had the rest been near them, to pour in their shot continually, there might have been a complete victory obtained; but staying to load their pieces again, discovered the whole matter. They were perceived by some of the scattering savages at a distance, who let fly their arrows among them, wounded *Atkins* himself, and killed his fellow *Englishman*, and one of the *Indians* taken with the women. Nor did our party fail to answer them while they retreated, killing above twenty savages: And here I cannot but take notice of our poor dying slave; though stopt from his retreat by a fatal arrow, yet with his staff and hatchet, he desperately and gallantly assailed the pursuers, and killed five of the savages, before his life submitted to a multiplicity of wounds. Nor is the cruelty or malice of the *Indians* to be less remarked, in breaking the arms, legs, and heads, of the two dead bodies, with their clubs and wooden swords, after a most wretched manner. Hereupon our party was obliged to interpose between the savages and *Atkins*, who had retreated to a rising ground in the wood; but after three volleys we were obliged to retreat also; for they were so very numerous and desperate, that they came to the very teeth of us, shot their arrows like a cloud, and their wounded men, enraged with cruel pain, fought like madmen. They did not think fit to follow us, but drawing themselves up in a circle, they gave two triumphant shouts, in token of victory; though they had the grief to see several of their wounded bleed to death before them.

After I had, Sir, drawn up our little army together upon a rising ground, *Atkins*, wounded as he was, would have had us attack the whole body of the savages at once: But, well pleased with the gallantry of the man, we replied, *You perceived, Seignior Atkins, how their wounded men fought; let them alone till morning, when, being faint, stiff and sore, we shall have the fever to combat with.* To which *Will. Atkins*, smilingly replied, *That's very true, Seigniors, and so shall I too; and that's the reason I would fight them now I am warm.* We all answered,  
*Seignior*

*Seignior Atkins*, for your part, you have behaved yourself very gallantly; and if you are not able to approach the enemy in the morning, we will fight for you; till then we think it convenient to wait.

By the brightness of the moon that night, we perceived the savages in great disorder, about their dead and wounded men. This made us change our resolution, by falling upon them in the night, if we could give them one volley undiscovered. And this we had a fair opportunity to do, by one of the two *Englishmen's* leading us round between the woods and the sea side westward, and turning short south, came privately to a place where the thickest of them were, unheard, and unperceived. Eight of us fired among them, and did dreadful execution; and, in half a minute after, eight more of us let fly, killing and wounding abundance of them; and then, dividing ourselves into three bodies, eight persons in each body, we marched from among the trees to the very teeth of the enemy, sending forth the greatest shouts and acclamations. The savages, hearing a different noise from three quarters at once, stood in the utmost confusion; but coming in sight of us, let fly a volley of arrows, which wounded poor old *Friday*, yet happily it did not prove mortal. But rushing in suddenly among them, we fired three several ways, and then fell to work with our swords, staves, hatchets, and the but end of our muskets, with such fury as could not be resisted; so that setting forth the most dismal screaming and howling, they had recourse to their feet, to save their lives by a speedy flight. Nor must we forget the valour of the two women, for they exposed themselves to the greatest dangers, killed many with their arrows, and valiantly destroyed several more with their hatchets.

Indeed we were so much tired in fighting these two battles, that we did not then trouble ourselves to pursue them to their canoes, in which we thought they would presently put to the ocean: But there happened a dreadful storm at sea, which continued all that night, and not only prevented their voyage, but dashed several of their boats to pieces against the beach; and drove the rest so high upon the shore, as required infinite pains to get them off again. After our men had taken some refreshment, and a little repose, they resolved to go towards the place of their landing early in the morning, and see whether they were gone off, or in what posture they remained. This necessarily led them to the place of battle, where several of the savages were expiring; a sight no way pleasing to generous minds, to delight in their misery, though obliged to conquer them by the law of arms. But our own *Indian* slaves put them out of their pain, by dispatching them with their hatchets. At length, coming in view of the remainder of their army, we found them leaning upon their knees, which were bended to-

wards

wards their mouths, and the head between the two hands. Hereupon, coming within musket shot of them, I ordered two pieces to be fired without ball, in order to alarm them, that we might plainly know whether they had the courage to fight another battle, or were utterly dispirited from such an attempt, that we might manage them accordingly. And indeed the project took very well; for no sooner did the savages hear the first gun, and perceive the flash of the second, but they suddenly started upon their feet, in the greatest consternation; and when we approached towards them, they ran howling and screaming away up the hill into the country.

We could rather, at first, have wished that the weather had permitted them to have gone off to the sea; but, when we considered that their escape might occasion the approach of multitudes to our utter ruin and desolation, we were very well pleased the contrary happened: And *Will. Atkins*, who, though wounded, would not part from us all this while, advised us not to let slip this advantage, but clapping between them and their boats, deprive them of the capacity of ever returning to plague the island. *I know*, said he, *there is but one objection you can make; which is, that these creatures, living like beasts in the wood, may make excursions, rife the plantations, and destroy the tame goats: But then consider, we had better have to do with an hundred men, whom we can kill, or make slaves of at leisure, than with a hundred nations, whom it is impossible we should save ourselves from, much less subdue.* This advice, and these arguments being approved of, we set fire to their boats; and, though they were so wet that they would not burn entirely, yet we made them incapable of swimming in the seas. As soon as the *Indians* perceived what we were doing, many of them ran out of the woods in flight of us, and kneeling down, piteously cried out *Oa, Oa, Waramakoa*, intimating, I suppose, that if we would but spare their canoes, they would never trouble us again.

But all their complaints, and submissions, and entreaties were in vain; for, self preservation obliging us to the contrary, we destroyed every one of them that had escaped the fury of the ocean. When the *Indians* perceived this, they raised a lamentable cry, and ran into the woods, and from thence ranged about the whole island. Here we should have considered indeed, that making these creatures thus desperate, we ought, at the same time, to have set a sufficient guard upon the plantations. The savages had before found out the bower, destroyed the fences, trod the corn down under foot, and torn up the vines and grapes. But though we were able, upon all occasions, to fight these creatures; yet they were too swift for us, nor durst we go out single, for fear of their numbers: But our only comfort was, they had no weapons, nor any materials to



make them; and their extremity appeared in a little time after.

As to our own parts, the only refuge we had left, was our Rock of cattle in the valley by the cave, with some little corn that grew there, and the plantation of *Will. Atkins* and his companions, one of whom being killed by an arrow, they were now reduced to two. And it is remarkable, that this was the fellow that cut the poor *Indian* with his hatchet, and had a design to murder me and my countrymen, the *Spaniards*. Such was our mean condition, that we concluded to drive the savages up to the farther part of the island, south west, at present, where no *Indians* landed, killing as many of them as we could, till we had reduced their number, and then give the remainder some corn to plant, teaching them how to live by their daily labour. Accordingly we pursued them with our guns, at the hearing of which, they were so terrified, that they would fall upon the ground. Every day we killed and wounded some of them, and many we found starved to death, so that our hearts began to relent at the sight of such miserable objects. At last, with great difficulty, taking one of them alive, and using him with kindness and tenderness, we brought him to old *Friday*, who talked to him, and told him how good we would be to them all, giving them corn and land to plant and live in, and present nourishment, provided they would keep within such bounds as should be allotted them, and not do prejudice to others: *And therefore, said he, go your way, and inform your countrymen of it; which if they will not agree to, every one of them shall be slain.*

The poor creatures, thoroughly humbled, and being reduced to about thirty seven, joyfully accepted the offer, and earnestly begged for some food: Hereupon we sent twelve *Spaniards*, and two *Englishmen*, well armed, together with old *Friday*, and three *Indian* slaves, who marched to the place where they were; the slaves were loaded with a large quantity of bread, and rice cakes, leading three live goats. Being ordered to sit down on the side of the hill, the poor *Indians* ate the victuals very thankfully, and have proved faithful to the last, never trespassing beyond their bounds: where at this day they quietly and happily remain, and where we now and then visit them. They are confined to a neck of land, about a mile and a half broad, and three or four in length, on the south east corner of the island, the sea being before, and lofty mountains behind them, quite from the appearance of canoes, and whose countrymen never make enquiry after them. We gave them twelve hatchets, and three or four knives; have taught them both to build their huts, make wooden spades, plant corn, make bread, breed tame goats and milk them, as likewise to make wicker work, in which I must ingenuously confess they infinitely out

did us, making themselves several pretty necessaries and fancies, as baskets, sieves, bird cages, and cupboards, as also stools, beds, and couches, no less useful than delightful: And now they live the most innocent and inoffensive creatures that ever were subdued in the world, wanting nothing but wives to make them a nation.

Thus, kind Sir, have I given you, according to my ability, an impartial account of the various transactions that have happened in the island since your departure to this day; which, blessing us with your presence, seems as if it would make us forget our late sufferings, though our losses are not fully retrieved; and yet we have no reason to complain against the kind Providence of Heaven. When you inspect your little kingdom, you will find it something improved in general, your flocks increased, and your subjects augmented: So that from a desolate island, as this was before your wonderful deliverance upon it, here is a visible prospect of its becoming a populous, and well governed little kingdom, to your immortal fame and glory.

*The End of the Spanish Governour's Relation.*

*The Continuation of the Life of Robinson Crusoe, both of those Passages that happened during the Time of his Continuance on the Island, and after his Departure, till he arrived again in his Native Country.*

THERE is no doubt to suppose, but that the preceding relation of my faithful Spaniard was very agreeable, and no less surprising to me, the young priest, and to all that heard it: Nor were these people less pleased with those absolutely necessary utensils that I brought them, as kinives, scissars, spades, shovels, and pick axes, with which they made a mighty improvement to their habitations. So much were they affected to wicker work, prompted by the ingenuity of the *Indians* who assisted them, that when I viewed the *Englishmen's* colonies, they seemed at a distance, as though they had lived like bees in a hive: For *Will. Atkins*, who was now become a very industrious and sober man, had made himself a tent of basket work round the outside; the walls were worked in close as a basket, in pannels, or strong squares of 32 in number, standing about 7 feet high; in the middle was another, not above 22 paces round, but much stronger built, being in form eight square, and in the eight corners stood eight strong posts, round the top of which he laid strong pieces, pinned with wooden pins, from which he raised a pyramid from the roof, mighty pretty,

I assure you, and joined very well together with iron spikes which he made himself; for he had made him a forge with a pair of wooden bellows, and charcoal for his work, forming an anvil out of one of the iron crows to work upon; and in this manner would he make himself hooks, staples, spikes, bolts, and hinges. After he had covered the roof of the innermost tent, he made it so firm between the rafters and the basket work, thatching that over again with rice straw, and over that a large leaf of a tree, that his house was as dry as if it had been tiled or slated. The outer circuit was covered, as a leanto, quite round this inner apartment, laying long rafters from the 32 angles, to the top posts of the inner house, about 20 feet distant, so that there was a space like a walk within the outer wicker wall, and without the inner, near 20 feet in breadth. The inner place he partitioned off with the same wicker work, dividing it into six fair apartments, every one of which had a door, first into the entry of the main tent, and another into the space and walk that was round it, not only convenient for retreat, but for family necessaries. Those six spaces were not taken up in the circumference. What other apartments the outward circle had, were thus ordered: When you were in at the door of the outer circle, there was a passage directly to the door of the inner house; on either side was a wicker partition and a door, by which you went first into a large room 22 feet wide, and about 30 long, and through that into another of a smaller length; so that in the outward circle were ten handsome rooms, six of which were only to be come at through the apartments of the inner tent, serving as retiring rooms, to the respective chambers of the inner circle, and four large warehouses which went in through one another, two on either hand of the passage that led through the outward door to the inner tent. In short, nothing could be built more ingeniously, kept more neat, or have better conveniences: And here lived three families, *Will. Atkins*, his companion, their wives and children, and the widow of the deceased. As to religion, the men seldom taught their wives the knowledge of God, any more than the sailors' custom of swearing by his name. The greatest improvement their wives had, was, they taught them to speak English so as to be understood. None of their children were then above six years old. They were all fruitful enough; and, I think, the cook's mate's wife was big of her sixth child.

So much as to the *Englishmen*. When I enquired of the *Spaniards*, about their circumstances among the savages, they told me, that they were a poor miserable handful of people, that, having no means put into their hands, were abandoned to despair, and thought of nothing but starving. One of them confessed, that they were in the wrong to think so, and for refusing the assistance that reason offered for their support, as well

well as future deliverance: that grief was a most insignificant passion, regarding things past remedy, and having no hopes of the good things to come, which was an addition to affliction: All which verified this noted proverb,

*In trouble to be troubled.*

*Is to have trouble doubled.*

Nor did his remark end here; for, making observations upon my improvements, and of my condition at first, infinitely worse than their's; he told me that *Englishmen* had, in their distress, greater presence of mind, than those of any other country that he had met with; and that they, and the *Portuguese*, were the worst men in the world to struggle under misfortune. When they landed among the savages, they found but little provision, unless they would turn cannibals; there being but a few roots and herbs with little substance in them, and of which the natives gave them but very sparingly. Many were the ways they took to civilize and teach the savages, but in vain; nor would they own them to be their instructors, whose lives were owing to their bounty. Their extremities were very great, being many days entirely without food; the savages there being more indolent, and less devouring, than those who had better supplies. Whenever war happened, they assisted these people, being compelled thereto, and by which, my faithful *Spaniard* being taken, had like to have been devoured. They had lost their ammunition, which rendered their fire arms useless; nor could they use the bows and arrows that were given them; so that while the armies were at a distance they had no chance, but would combat their enemies when closed with halberds, and sharpened sticks put into the muzzles of their muskets. They made themselves targets of wood, covered with the skins of wild beasts; and when one happened to be knocked down, the rest of the company fought over him till he recovered; and then standing close in a line, they would make their way through a thousand savages. At the return of their friend, who they thought had been entombed in the bowels of their enemies, their joy was inconceivable. Nor were they less surpris'd at the sight of the loaves of bread I had sent them, things that they had not seen for several years, at the same time crossing and blessing it, as though it was manna sent from heaven: But when they knew the errand, and perceived the boat, which was to carry them to the person and place from whence such relief came, this struck them with a surpris'e of joy, that made some of them faint away, and others burst into tears.

This was the summary account that I had from them; so that it now becomes necessary I inform the reader what I did for them, and in what a condition I left them. As we were all agreed that the savages would scarce trouble them any more

more, so we had no apprehensions about it. I told them I was come purely to establish them, and not remove them; and upon that occasion, had not only brought them necessaries for convenience and defence, but also artificers, and other persons, both for their necessary employments, and to add to their number. They were all together when I thus talked to them; and, before I delivered to them the stores I had brought, I asked them one by one, if they had entirely forgot their old animosities, would engage in the strictest friendship, and shake hands with one another? To this, *Will. Atkins*, with abundance of good humour, said they had afflictions enough to make them all sober, and enemies enough to make them all friends: As for himself, he would live and die among them: owning that what the *Spaniards* had done to him, his own mad humour had made necessary for them to do. Nor had the *Spaniards* occasion to justify this proceeding to me; but they told me, that since *Will. Atkins* had behaved himself so valiantly in fight, and at other times shewed such a regard to the common interest of them all, they had not only forgot all that was past, but thought he ought to be as much trusted with arms and necessaries as any of them, which they testified by making him command next to the Governour; and they most heartily embraced the opportunity of giving me this solemn assurance, that they would never separate their interest again as long as they lived.

Well, upon these kind declarations of friendship, we appointed all of us to dine together the next day, on which I caused the ship's cook, and his mate, to come on shore for that purpose, and the cook's mate on land assisted them in dressing our dinner. We brought from the ship six pieces of beef, and four of pork, together with our punch bowl, and materials to fill it; and, in particular, I gave them ten bottles of *French* claret, and ten of *English* beer, which was very acceptable to them. The *Spaniards* added to our feast five whole kids; which being roasted, three of them were sent as fresh meat to the sailors on board, and the other two we ate ourselves. After our merry and innocent feast was over, I began to distribute my cargo among them; at first I gave them linen sufficient to make every one of them four shirts, and, at the *Spaniard's* request, made them up six. The thin *English* stuffs I allotted to make every one a light coat, like a frock, agreeable to the climate; and left them such a quantity, as to make more upon their decay; as also pumps, shoes, hats, and stockings. I cannot express the pleasing satisfaction which sat upon the countenances of these poor men, when they perceived what care I took of them, as if I had been a common father to them all; and they all engaged never to leave the island, till I gave my consent for their departure. Then I presented to them the people I brought; as the taylor, smith, and the

two carpenters ; but especially my Jack of all Trades, was a remarkable man among them. My taylor fell immediately to work, and made every man of them a shirt ; after which he learned the women to sew and stitch, thereby to become more helpful to their husbands. Neither were the carpenters less useful, taking in pieces their clumsy things, instead of which they made convenient and handsome tables, stools, bedsteads, cupboards, lockers and shelves. But when I carried them to see *Will. Atkins's* basket house, they owned they never saw such a piece of natural ingenuity before. *I'm sure*, said one of the carpenters, *the man that built this has no need of us ; you need, Sir, do nothing but give him tools.*

I divided the tools among them in this manner : To every man I gave a digging spade, a shovel and a rake, as having no harrows or ploughs ; and to every separate place a pick axe, a crow, a broad axe, and a saw, with a store for a general supply, should any be broken or worn out. I left them also nails, staples, hinges, hammers, chisels, knives, scissars, and all sorts of tools and iron work ; and for the use of the smith three tons of unwrought iron for a supply : And as to arms and ammunition, I stored them even to profusion, or at least sufficient to equip a little army against all opposers whatsoever.

The young man (whose mother was unfortunately starved to death) together with the maid, a pious and well educated young woman, seeing things so well ordered on shore (for I made them accompany me) as also considering they had no occasion to go so long a voyage as to the *East Indies* ; they both desired of me, that I would leave them there, and enter them among my subjects. This I readily agreed to, ordering them a plot of ground, on which were three little houses erected, environed with basket work, pallisadoed like *Atkins's*, and adjoining to his plantation. So contrived were their tents that each of them had a room apart to lodge in ; while the middle tent was not only their store house, but their place for eating and drinking. At this time the two *Englishmen* removed their habitations to their former place ; so that now the island was divided into three colonies : *First*, these I have just now mentioned : *Secondly*, that of *Will. Atkins*, where there were four families of *Englishmen*, with their wives and children, the widow and her children ; the young man and the maid, who (by the way) we made a wife of before our departure ; three savages, who were slaves ; the taylor, smith, (who serve only as gunsmith) and my other celebrated person, called Jack of all Trades. *Thirdly*, my chiefest colony consisted of *Spaniards*, with old *Friday*, at my old habitation, which was my capital city : And surely never was there such a metropolis before, hid in so obscure a grove, that a thousand men might  
have

have ranged the island a month, and looking purposely for it, I believe, could not have found it; and they had enlarged its boundaries, both without and within, in a secret and most surprising manner.

But now I think it high time to speak of the young *French* priest, of the order of *St. Benedict*, whose judicious and pious discourses upon sundry occasions, merit an extraordinary observation: Nor can his being a *French Papist Priest*, I presume, give offence to any of my readers, when they have this assurance from me, that he was a person of the most courteous disposition, extensive charity, and exalted piety. His arguments were always agreeable to reason, and his conversation the most acceptable of any person that I had ever yet met with in my life.

Sir (said he to me one day) since under God (at the same time crossing his breast) you have not only saved my life, but, by permitting me to go this voyage, have granted me the happiness of free conversation, I think it my duty, as my profession obliges me to save what souls I can, by bringing them to the knowledge of some Catholic doctrine, necessary to salvation; but since they are under your immediate government, in gratitude, justice, and decency, for what you have done for me, I shall offer no farther points in religion, than what shall merit your approbation. Pleased with the modesty of his carriage, I told him he should not be the worse used for being of a different persuasion, if, upon that very account, we did not suffer in points of faith, not becoming in a country, where the poor *Indians* ought to be instructed in the knowledge of the true God, and his Son Jesus Christ. To this he replied, That conversation might easily be separated from disputes; that he would discourse with me rather as a gentleman than a religious; but, if we did enter upon religious arguments, upon my desiring the same, that I would give him liberty to defend his own principles. He further added, that he would do all that became him in his office, as a priest, as well as a christian, to procure the happiness of all that were in the ship; that though he could not pray with, he would pray for us, on all occasions: And then he told me several extraordinary events of his life, within a few years past, but particularly in this last, which was the most remarkable: That in this voyage he had the misfortune to be five times shipped and unshipped. His first design was to have gone to *Martinico*, for which he took a ship at *St. Malo*, but was forced into *Lisbon* by bad weather, the vessel running aground in the mouth of the *Tagus*: That from thence he went on board a *Portuguese* ship bound to the *Madeiras*, whose master being but an indifferent mariner, and out of his reckoning, they were drove to *Fial*, where selling their commodity, which was corn, they resolved to take in  
their

their loading at the Isle of *May*, and to sail to *Newfoundland*; at the banks of which they met a *French* ship, bound to *Quebeck*, in the river of *Canada*, and from thence to *Martinico*: In this ship he embarked, the master of which dying at *Quebeck*, that voyage was suspended: And lastly, shipping himself for *France*, that ship was destroyed by the fury of the flames, as before has been related: And so our discourse ended for that time.

Another morning he comes to me, just as I was going to visit the *Englishmens'* colony, and tells me, that as he knew the prosperity of the island was my principal desire, so he had something to communicate agreeable to my design, and perhaps might put it, more than he yet thought it was, in the way of the benediction of heaven. How, Sir I said I in a surprize, are we not yet in the way of God's blessing, after all these signal providences and deliverances, of which you have had such an ample relation? He replied, I hope, Sir, you are in the way, and that your good design will prosper; but still there are some among you that are not equally right in their actions: And remember, I beseech you, Sir, that *Achan*, by his crime, removed God's blessing from the camp of the Children of *Israel*; that, though six and thirty were entirely innocent, yet they became the objects of divine vengeance, and bore the weight of the punishment accordingly.

So sensibly was I touched with this discourse, and so satisfied with that ardent piety that enflamed his soul, that I desired him to accompany me to the *Englishmens'* plantations, which he was very glad of, by reason they were the subjects of what he designed to discourse with me about. So we walked on together, and then he began in the following manner:

Sir, said he, I must confess it is a great unhappiness that we disagree in several doctrinal articles of religion; but yet this we acknowledge, that there is a GOD, who, having given us some stated rules for our service and obedience, we ought not willingly and knowingly to offend, either<sup>ly</sup>; neglecting what he has commanded, or doing what he has forbidden: and this too is owned by every Christian, that whenever any people presumptuously sin against God's command, the Almighty withdraws his blessing from them; and therefore every good man ought to prevent such neglect of, or sin against God and his commands, so long as any persons are under his care. Hereupon I thanked him for expressing so great a concern for us, and desired him to explain the particulars of what he had observed; that according to the parable of *Achan*, I might remove that cursed thing from us. Why then, Sir, said he, in the first place, you have four *Englishmen*, who, having taken savage women to their wives, by whom they have had several children, and yet not legally married, as the laws of God and man require; they, I say, Sir, are no less than adulterers,



terers, and, living in adultery, are liable to the curse of God. I know, Sir, you may object the want of a priest or clergymen of any kind; as also pen, ink and paper, to write down a contract of marriage, and have it signed between them. But neither this nor what the *Spanish* Governour has told you, of their chusing by consent, can be reckoned a marriage, nor any more than an agreement to keep them from quarrelling among themselves: For, Sir, the essence or sacrament of matrimony (so he called it) not only consists in mutual consent, but in the legal obligation which compels them to own and acknowledge one another, to abstain from other persons, the men to provide for their wives and children, and the women to the same, or like conditions, *mutatis mutandis*, on their side: whereas these men, Sir, upon their own pleasure, on any occasion, forsake these women to marry others, and by disowning their children, suffer them utterly to perish. And now, Sir, added he, can God be honoured in such an unlawful liberty as this? How can a blessing succeed the ~~best~~ endeavours, if men are allowed to live in open adultery? Indeed I was struck with the thing itself, and they were much to blame that no formal contract had been made, though it had been breaking a stick between them, to engage them to live as man and wife, never to separate, but love, cherish, and comfort one another all their lives. But, Sir, said I, when they took these women, I was not here; and if it is adultery, 'tis past my remedy, and I cannot help it. 'Tis true, Sir, answered the young Priest, you cannot be charged with that part of the crime which was done in your absence: But, I beseech you, don't flatter yourself that you are under no obligation, now, to put a period to it; which if you neglect to do, the guilt will be entirely on you, alone; since it is certainly in no body's power but your's to alter their condition. I must confess I was so dull, that I thought he meant I should part them, which, knowing it would put the whole island in confusion, I told him I could not consent to upon any account whatsoever. Sir, said he, in a great surprize, I do not mean that you should separate, but marry them: I mean in your way by a written contract, signed by both man and woman, and by all the witnesses present, which all the *European* laws decree to be of sufficient efficacy. Amazed with such true piety and sincerity, and considering the validity of a written contract, I acknowledged all that he said to be very just and kind, and that I would discourse with the men about it: Neither could I see what reason they could have not to let him marry them, whose authority in that affair is owned to be as authentic as if they were married by any of our clergymen in *England*.

The next complaint he had to make me was this, That these *English* subjects of mine, having lived with these women seven

years, who being of good understanding, and capable of instruction, having learnt them not only to speak, but to read *English*; all this while they had never taught them any thing of the Christian religion, or the knowledge of God; much less in what manner he ought to be served. And is not this an unaccountable neglect? said he, warmly. Depend upon it, God Almighty will call them to account for such contempt. And though I am not of your religion, yet I should be glad to see these people released from the devil's power, and be saved by the principles of the Christian religion, the knowledge of God, of a Redeemer, the resurrection, and of a future state. But, as it is not yet too late, if you please to give me leave to instruct them, I doubt not but I shall supply this great defect, by bringing them into the great circle of christianity, even while you continue in the island.

I could hold no longer, but, embracing him, told him, with a thousand thanks, I would grant what he requested; and desired him to perform in the third article, which he did in the following manner:

Sir, said he, it should be a maxim among all Christians, That christian knowledge ought to be propagated by all possible means, and on all occasions. Upon this account, our church sends missionaries into *Persia, India, and China*, men who are willing to die for the sake of God, and the Christian faith, in order to bring poor infidels into the way of salvation. Now, Sir, here is an opportunity to convert seven and thirty poor savages, that I wonder how you can pass by such an occasion of doing good, which is really worth the expence of a man's whole life.

I must confess I was so confounded at his discourse, that I could not tell how to answer him: Sir, said he, seeing me in disorder, I shall be very sorry if I have given you offence: No, Sir, said I, I'm rather confounded; and you know my circumstances, that being bound to the *East Indies*, in a merchant ship, I cannot wrong the owners so much, as to detain the ship here, the men lying at victuals and wages on their account. If I stay above twelve days, I must pay 3*l.* sterling per diem, demurrage, nor must the ship stay above eight days more, so that I am unable to engage in this work, unless I would leave the ship, and so be reduced to my former condition. The priest, though he owned this was hard upon me, yet laid it to my conscience, whether the blessing of saving seven and thirty souls, was not worth venturing all that I had in the world? Sir, said I, 'tis very true; but, as you are an ecclesiastic, it naturally falls into your profession: why therefore don't you rather offer to undertake it yourself, than press me to it? Upon this he turned about, making a very low bow. I most humbly thank God and you, Sir, said he, for so blessed a call, and  
most

most willingly undertake so glorious an office, which will sufficiently compensate all the difficulties and hazards I have gone through, in a long and uncomfortable voyage.

While he was thus speaking, I could discover a rapture in his face, by his colour coming and going; at the same time his eyes sparkled like fire; with all the signs of the most zealous transports. And when I asked whether he was in earnest, Sir, said he, it was to preach to the *Indians* I consented to come along with you; these infidels, even in this little island, are infinitely of more worth than my poor life; and, so I am, the happy instrument of saving these poor creatures' souls, I care not if I never see my native country again. The only thing I beg of you more is, that you would leave *Friday* with me, to be my interpreter, without whose assistance neither of us will understand each other.

This request very sensibly troubled me, first, upon *Friday's* being bred a Protestant, and secondly for the affection I bore to him for his fidelity: But immediately the remembrance of *Friday's* father coming into my head, I recommended him to him, as having learned *Spanish*, which the Priest also understood, and so was thoroughly satisfied with him.

When we came to the *Englishmen*, after I had told them what necessary things I had done for them, I talked to them of the scandalous life they led; told them what notice the Clergyman had taken of it, and asked them if they were married men, or bachelors? They answered two of them were widowers, and the other three single men. But, said I, with what conscience can you call these your wives, by whom you have so many children, and yet are not lawfully married? They all said, that they took them before the Governour as such, having nobody else to marry them, which they thought as legal as if they had had a parson. No doubt, said I, but in the sight of God you are so: But, unless I am assured of your honest intent, never to desert these poor creatures, I can do nothing more for you, neither can you expect God's blessing while you live in such an open course of adultery. Hereupon *Will. Atkins*, who spoke for the rest, told me, that they believed their wives the most innocent and virtuous creatures in the world; that they would never forsake them while they had breath; and that if there was a Clergyman in the ship, they would be married to them with all their hearts. I told you before, said I, that I have a minister with me, who shall marry you to-morrow morning, if you are willing; so I would have you consult to-night with the rest about it. I told him the Clergyman was a *Frenchman*, and knew not a word of *English*, but that I would act as a clerk between them. And indeed this business met with such speedy success, that in a few minutes after they all told me, they were ready to be formal-  
ly

ly married as soon as I pleased, with which informing the Priest, he was exceedingly rejoiced.

Nothing now remained, but that the women were to be made sensible of the meaning of the thing, with which being well-satisfied, they and their husbands attended at my apartment the next morning: There was my priest, habited in a black vest, something like a cassock, with a sash round it, much resembling a Minister, and I was his interpreter. But the seriousness of his behaviour, and the scruples he made of marrying the women who were not baptized, gave them an exceeding reverence for his person: Nor indeed would he marry them at all, till he obtained my liberty to discourse both with the men and women; and then he told them, That, in the sight of all indifferent men, and in the sense of the laws of society, they had lived in open adultery, which nothing now, but their consent to marry, or final separation could put an end to; and even here was a difficulty, with respect to the laws of Christian matrimony, in marrying a professed Christian to an Heathen idolater; unbaptized but yet there was time enough to make them profess the name of Christ, without which nothing could be done; that besides, he believed themselves very indifferent Christians, and consequently had not discoursed with their wives on that subject; and that unless they promised him to do so, he could not marry them, as being expressly forbidden by the laws of God.

All this they heard attentively, and owned readily: But, Lord, Sir, said *Will. Atkins* to me, how should we teach them religion, who know nothing of it ourselves? And should we talk to our wives of God, Jesus Christ, Heaven and Hell, they would only laugh at us, who never yet have practised religion, but on the contrary all manner of wickedness. *Will. Atkins*, said I, can't you tell your wife she's in the wrong; and that her Gods are idols, which can neither hear, speak or understand; but that our God, who has made, can destroy all things; that he rewards the good, and punishes the wicked; and at last will bring us to judgment: Can't you tell her these things? That's true, said *Atkins*, but then she'll tell me 'tis utterly false, since I am not punished and sent to the devil, who have been such a wicked creature. These words I interpreted to the priest: O I said he, tell him his repentance will make him a very good minister to his spouse, qualifying him to preach on the mercy and long suffering of a merciful Being, who desires not the death of a sinner; that he even defers damnation to the last judgment, which will lead to the doctrine of it, and will make him an excellent preacher to his wife.— This I repeated to *Atkins*, who being more than ordinarily affected with it, replied, I know all this, Sir, and a great deal more; but how can I have the impudence to talk thus to my wife,  
when

when my conscience witness against me? Alas! (said he, with tears in his eyes; and giving a great sigh) as for repenting that is for ever past me. Past you! *Atkins*, said I, what do you mean? I know well enough, said he, what I mean, I mean 'tis too late.

When I told the priest what he said, the poor affectionate man could not refrain from weeping: But recovering himself, pray, sir, said he, ask him, if he is contented that it is too late; or is he concerned, and wishes it were not so? This question I put fairly to *Atkins*, who replied in a passion, how can I be easy in a state of damnation, which I know must terminate in my ruin. For I really believe some time or other, I shall cut my throat, to put a period both to my life and to the terrors of my conscience.

At this the clergyman shook his head: Sir, said he, pray tell him it is not too late! Christ will give him repentance, if he has recourse to the merit of his Passion. Does he think he is beyond the power of Divine mercy? There may indeed be a time when provoked mercy will no longer strive, but never too late for men to repent in this world. I told *Atkins* every word the Priest had said, who then parted from us, to talk to his wife; while we discoursed with the rest: But those were very stupid in religious matters, yet all of them promised to do their endeavours to make their wives turn Christians; and, upon these promises, the Priest married the three couple. But, as *Atkins* was the only sincere convert, and of more sense than the rest, my Clergyman was earnestly enquiring after him: Sir, said he, let's walk out of this labyrinth, and I dare say we shall find this poor man preaching to his wife already. And indeed we found it true; for, coming to the edge of the wood, we perceived *Atkins*, and his savage wife, sitting under the shade of a bush in very earnest discourse: He pointed to the sun, to the quarters of the earth, to himself, to her, the wood, and the trees. Immediately we could perceive him start upon his feet, fall down upon his knees, and lift up both his hands; at which the tears ran down my Clergyman's cheeks; but our great misfortune was, that we could not hear one word that passed between them. Another time he would embrace her, wiping the tears from her eyes, kissing her with the greatest transports, and then both kneeled down for some minutes together. Such raptures of joy did this occasion in my young Priest, that he could scarcely contain himself: And a little after this, we observed by her motion, as frequently lifting up her hands and laying them on her breast, that she was mightily affected with his doctrine; and so they withdrew from our sight.

When we came back, we found them both waiting to be called in; upon which we agreed to examine him alone. and

so I began thus to discourse him. Prithee, *Will. Atkins*, said I, what education had you? What was your father?

*W. A.* A better man than ever I shall be: He was, Sir, a Clergyman, who gave me good instruction, or correction, which I despised, like a brute as I was, and murdered my poor father.

*Priest.* Ha! a murderer.\*

*R. C.* What, did you kill him with your hands?

*W. A.* No, Sir, I did not cut his throat, but broke his heart; by the most unnatural return of disobedience to the tenderest and best of fathers.

*R. C.* Well, I pray God grant you repentance; I did not ask you to extort a confession; but I asked you, because I see you have more knowledge of what is good than your companions.

*W. A.* O, Sir, whenever I look back upon my past life, my conscience upbraids me with my father; the sins against our parents make the deepest wounds, and their weight lies the heaviest on the mind.

*R. C.* You talk, *Will.* too feelingly and sensibly for me: I am not able to bear it.

*W. A.* You bear, it, Sir! you know nothing of it.

*R. C.* But yes, *Atkins*, I do; and every shore, valley, and tree in this island, witness the anguish of my soul for my un-dutifulness to my kind father, whom I have murdered likewise; yet my repentance falls infinitely short of yours. But *Will.* how comes the sense of this matter to touch you just now?

*W. A.* Sir, the work you have set me about has occasioned it; for, talking to my wife about God and religion, she has preached me such a sermon, that I shall retain it in lasting remembrance.

*R. C.* No, no, 'tis your own moving pious arguments to her, has made conscience fling them back upon you. But, pray, *Atkins*, inform us what passed between you and your wife, and in what manner did you begin?

*W. A.* I talked to her of the laws of marriage, the reason of such compacts, whereby order and justice is maintained; without which, men would run from their wives and children, to the dissolution of families and inheritances.

*R. C.* Well, and what did she say to all this?

*W. A.* Sir, we began our discourse in the following manner; which I shall repeat exactly, according to my mean capacity, if you think it worth your while to honour it with your attention.

*The*

\* Here the Priest started and looked pale, as thinking he had really killed his father.

The DIALOGUE between Will. Atkins, and his Wife, in the Wood.

*Wife.* YOU tell me marriage God appoint : have you God in your country ?

*W. A.* Yes, child, God is in ev'ry nation.

*Wife.* No, great old *Benamuckee* God is my country, not yours.

*W. A.* My dear, God is in heaven, which he made, the earth, the sea, and all therein.

*Wife.* Why you not tell me much long ago ?

*W. A.* My dear, I've been a wicked wretch, having a long time lived without the knowledge of God in the world.

*Wife.* What, not know great God in own nation ? No do good ting ? No say O to him ? That's strange !

*W. A.* But, my dear, many live as if there was no God in heaven for all that.

*Wife.* Why God suffer this ? Why makee not live well ?

*W. A.* It is our own faults, child.

*Wife.* But if he much great, can makee kill, why no makee kill when no serve him ? No be good mans, no cry O to him ?

*W. A.* That is true, my dear, he may strike us dead, but his abundant mercy spareth us.

*Wife.* Did not you tell God tankee for that ?

*W. A.* No, I have neither thanked him for his mercy, nor feared him for his power.

*Wife.* Then me not believe you God be good, not makee kill, when you makee him angry.

*W. A.* Alas I must my wicked life hinder you from believing in him.

*Wife.* How can me tink your God live there ? (pointing to heaven) Sure he no tell what you do there.

*W. A.* Yes, yes, my dear, he hears us speak, sees what we do, and knows what we even think.

*Wife.* Where then makee power strong, when he hears you curse, swear de great down ?

*W. A.* My dear, this shews he is indeed a God, and not a man, who has not such tender mercy.

*Wife.* Mercy ! what you call mercy ?

*W. A.* He pities and spares us ; as he is our great Creator, so also is he our tender father.

*Wife.* So God never angry, never kill wicked, then he no good, no great mighty.

*W. A.* O, my dear don't say so, he is both ; and many times he shews terrible examples of his judgement and vengeance.

*Wife.*

*Wife.* Then you makee de bargain with him; you do bad ting, he no hurt you, he hurt other mans.

*W. A.* No indeed, my sins are all presumptions upon his goodnes.

*Wife.* Well, and yet not makee you dead? and you give him no thankee neither?

*W. A.* 'Tis true, I am an ungrateful, unthankful dog, that I am.

*Wife.* Why you say, he makee you, why makee you no much better then?

*W. A.* 'Tis I alone that have deformed myself, and abused his goodnes.

*Wife.* Pray makee God know me, me no makee him angry, no do bad thing.

*W. A.* You mean, my dear, that you desire I would teach you to know God: Alas! poor dear creature! he must teach thee, and not I. But I'll pray earnestly to him to direct thee, and to forgive me, a miserable sinner. Hereupon I went a little distance, and, kneeling down, prayed earnestly to God to enlighten her mind and to pardon her sins: When this was done, we continued our discourse thus.

*Wife.* What you put down knee for? For what hold up hand? Who you speak to?

*W. A.* My dear, I bowed in token of submission to him that made me, and prayed that he would open your eyes and understanding.

*Wife.* And can he do that too? And will he hear what you say?

*W. A.* Yes, my dear, he bids us pray, and has given his promise that he will hear us.

*Wife.* When did he bid us pray? What, do you hear him speak?

*W. A.* No, my dear, but God has spoken formerly to good men from heaven; and by divine revelation, they have written all his laws down in a book.

*Wife.* O, where dat good book?

*W. A.* I have it not now by me; but, one time or other, I shall get it for you to read. Then he embraced her with great affection.

*Wife.* Pray tell-me how God teachee them write that book?

*W. A.* By that we know him to be God.

*Wife.* What way, what rule you know him?

*W. A.* Because he teaches what is good, just, and holy; and forbids all wicked and abominable actions that incur his displeasure.

*Wife.* O me fain understand that, and if he do all things you say he do, surely he hear me say O to him; he makee me good,



good, if I wish to be good ; he no kill me if I love him ; me tink, believe him great God ; me say O to him along with you, my dear.

Here the poor man fell upon his knees, and made her kneel down by him, praying in the greatest fervency, that God would instruct her by his holy spirit ; and that some time God, by his providence, would send them a bible for both their instruction. And such was the early piety of his new convert, that she made him promise never to forsake God any more ; lest, being made dead, as she called it, she should not only want her instructor, but himself be miserable in a long eternity.

Such a surprising account as this was, proved very affecting to us both, but particularly to the young Clegyan, who was mightily concerned he could not talk to her himself : Sir, said he, there is something more to be done to this woman than to marry her : I mean that she ought to be baptized. To this I presently agreed : Pray, said he again, ask her husband, whether he has ever talked to her of Jesus Christ, the salvation of sinners, the nature of faith and redemption in and by him, of the holy spirit, the resurrection ; last judgment, and a future state ; but the poor fellow melted into tears at this question, saying, that he had said something to her of these things, but his own conscience terrifying him with the most dreadful apprehensions, he was afraid lest her knowledge of it should make her rather contemn religion, than embrace it ; but if I would discourse with her, it was probable my labour would not be in vain. Accordingly I called her in, and placing myself as interpreter between the religious priest and the woman, I entreated him to go on : But surely never was such a sermon preached by any clergyman in these latter days of the world, which had so much zeal, knowledge and sincerity : In short he brought the woman to embrace the knowledge of Christ, and of redemption by him, with so surprising a degree of understanding, that she made it her own request to be baptized.

And now he performed his office in the sacrament of Baptism, first by saying some words over to himself in *Latin*, and then, asking me to give her a name, as being her godfather, he poued a whole dishful of water upon the woman's head, saying, *MARY*, I baptize thee in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, so that none could know what religion he was of ; and after, he pronounced the benediction in *Latin*. Thus, the woman being made a Christian, he married her to *Will. Atkins*, which being finished, he affectionately exhorted him to lead a holy life for the future ; that, since the Almighty, by the convictions of his conscience, had honoured him to be the instrument of his wife's conversion, he should not dishonour the grace of God, lest, while the savage was converted, the instrument should be cast away. And thus ended

ended the ceremony, which made it the most pleasant and agreeable day I ever passed in my life.

The affairs of the island being settled, I was preparing to go on board, when the young man, whose mother was starved, came to me, saying, That, as he understood I had a clergyman with me, who had married the *Englishmen* with savages, he had a match to make between two Christians, which he desired might be finished before I departed. But thinking it was himself that had courted his mother's maid, I persuaded him not to do any thing rashly upon the account of his solitary circumstances; that the maid was an unequal match for him, both in respect to substance and years; and that it was very probable he would live to return to his own country, where he might have a far better choice. At these words, he smilingly interrupted me, thanking me for my good advice; that, as he had nothing to beg of me, but a small settlement, with a servant or two, or some few necessaries; so he hoped I would not be unmindful of him when I returned to *England*, but give his letters to his friends; and that when he was redeemed, the plantation, and all its improvements, however valuable, should be returned to me again: But, as for the marriage he proposed, why truly it was between my Jack of all Trades, and the maid *Susan*.

Indeed I was agreeably surprized at the mentioning this match, which seemed very suitable; the one being a very ingenious fellow, and the other an excellent, dexterous, and sensible housewife, fit to be governess of the whole island: So we married them the same day; and as I was her father, and gave her away, so I gave her a handsome portion, and appointed her and her husband a large convenient space of ground for their plantation. The sharing out of the land to them, I left to *Will. Atkins*, who really very justly divided it to every person's satisfaction: They only desired one general writing, under my hand, for the whole, which I caused to be drawn up, signed, and sealed to them, setting out their bounds, and giving them a right to the whole possession of their respective plantations, with their improvements, to them and their heirs, reserving all the rest of the island as my own property, and a certain rent for every particular plantation, after 11 years. As to their laws and government, I exhorted them to love one another: And as to the *Indians*, who lived on a neck by themselves, I allotted three or four of them plantations, and the rest willingly chose to become servants to all the other families, by which means they were employed in useful labour, and fared much better than they did before. Thus the savages, being mixed with the Christians, the work of the conversion of the *Indians* might be set on foot by the latter, in the clergyman's absence, to our equal satisfaction. But how, said the young Priest,

Priest, shall I know that the Christians will do their parts to instruct them; I told him we would call them all together, that we should speak to the *Spaniards*, who were Papists, and I to the *English*, who were Protestants, and make them promise that they would never make any distinction in religion, but teach the general true knowledge of God, and his Son Jesus Christ, in order to convert the poor savages: And this indeed they all promised us accordingly.

When I came to *Will. Atkins's* house, I found his baptized wife, and the young woman newly married to my Jack of all Trades, were become great intimates, and discoursing of religion together: O Sir, said *Will. Atkins*, when God has sinners to reconcile to himself, he never wants an instructor: I knew I was unworthy of so good a work, and therefore this young woman has been sent hither, as it were from heaven, who is sufficient to convert a whole island of savages. The young woman blushed, and was going to rise, but I desired her to sit still, and hoped that God would bless her in so good a work: And then, pulling out a Bible, which I brought on purpose in my pocket for him; here *Atkins*, said I, here is an assistant that perhaps you had not before. So confounded was the poor man, that it was some time before he could speak; at last, turning to his wife, my dear, said he, did I not tell you that God could hear what we said? Here is the book I prayed for when you and I kneeled under the bush: God then heard us, and now has sent it. The woman was surprised, and thought God had really sent that individual book from heaven; but I turned to the young woman, and desired her to explain to the new convert, that God may properly be said to answer our petitions, when, in the course of his Providence, such particular things as we petitioned for, do come to pass. This the young woman did effectually; but surely *Will. Atkins's* joy cannot be expressed; no man in the world being more thankful for any thing, than he was for this bible, nor desire it from a better principle.

After several religious discourses, I desired the young woman to give me an account of the anguish she felt when she was starving to death for hunger; to which she readily consented, and began in the following manner:

“Sir, said she, all our victuals being gone, after I had fasted one day, my stomach was very sickish, and, at the approach of night, I was inclined to yawning and sleeping. When I slept upon the couch three hours: Three hours after, my stomach being more and more sickish, I laid down again, but could not sleep, being very faint and ill. Thus I passed the second day in a strange variety, first hungry, then sick again, with reachings to vomit. That night I dreamt that I was at *Barbadoes*, buying plenty of provisions, and dining heartily.

But

But when I awaked, my spirits were exceedingly sunk to find myself in the extremity of famine. There was but one glass of wine, which being mixed with sugar, I drank up, but, for want of substance to digest upon, the fumes of it got into my head, and made me senseless for some time. The third day, I was so ravenous and furious, that I could have ate a little child had it come in my way; during which time I was as mad as any creature in Bedlam. In one of these fits I fell down, and struck my face against the corner of a pallet bed, where my mistress lay: The blood gushed out of my nose, but by my excessive bleeding, both the violence of the fever, and the ravenous part of the hunger absted. After, I grew sick again, strove to vomit, but could not; then bleeding a second time, I swooned away as dead; coming to myself again, I had a dreadful gnawing pain at my stomach, which went off towards night with a longing desire for food. I took a draught of water and sugar, but it came up again; then I drank water without sugar, and that stayed with me. I laid me down on the bed, praying God he would take me away; after I had slumbered, I thought myself a dying, therefore recommending my soul to God, wished somebody would throw me into the sea. All this while my departing mistress lay by me. The last bit of bread she had, she gave to her dear child, my young master. The morning after, I fell into a violent passion of crying, and after that into hunger. I espied the blood that came from my nose in a basin, which I immediately swallowed up. At night I had the usual variations, as pain in the stomach, sick, sleepy, and ravenous; and I had no thoughts but that I should die before morning. Now came on a terrible griping in my bowels: Then I heard my young master's terrible lamentations, that his mother was dead! And, soon after the sailors cried, a sail, a sail, ballooning as if they were distracted, for joy of that relief, which we afterwards received from your hands."

Surely this is such a distinct account of starving to death, that I believe few ever met with the like: But to return to the disposition of things among my people. I did not take any notice to them of the sloop that I had framed, neither would I leave them the two pieces of brass cannon, or the two quarter deck guns that I had on board; lest, upon any disgust, they should have separated, or turned pirates, and so made the island a den of thieves, instead of a plantation of sober pious people. But, without these things, leaving them in a flourishing condition, with a promise to send them further relief from *Brazil*; as sheep, hogs, and cows (being obliged to kill the latter at sea, having no hay to feed them) I went on board the ship again the first of *May*, 1605, having been twenty days among them; and the next morning giving them a salute of five guns at parting, we set sail for the *Brazils*; but the third day, towards evening, there

there happening a calm, and yet being by a strong current drove to the N. N. E. towards the land side, we perceived the sea covered as it were with something very black, not easily to be discovered at first: Upon which our chief mate ascending the shrouds a little way, and taking a view with a perspective glass, he cries out, it is an army. An army, you fool! said I, What do you mean? Nay, Sir, said he, don't be angry; I assure you 'tis not only an army, but a fleet too; I believe there are a thousand canoes paddling along, and making haste towards us too.

Indeed every one of us were surpris'd at this relation; and my nephew, the captain, could not tell what to think of it, but imagin'd we should all be devour'd. Nor was I free from concern, when I consider'd how much we were becalm'd, and what a strong current set towards the shore: However, I encouraged him not to be afraid, but bring the ship to an anchor, as soon as we were certain that we must engage them. We accordingly did so, and furled all our sails: As to the savages, we fear'd nothing but their setting the ship on fire; to prevent which, I order'd them to get their boats out, and fasten them, one close by the head and the other by the stern, well manned, with sheets and buckets to extinguish the flames, should it so happen. But when the savages came up, they were a horrid sight indeed, but there were not so many as the mate had said; for, instead of a thousand canoes, they were about one hundred and twenty, though indeed they were too many, several of these canoes containing above sixteen or seventeen men.

As they approach'd near us, they seem'd to be in the greatest amazement, and not knowing what to make of us, they row'd round the ship, which occasion'd us to call to the men in the boats, not to suffer them to come near them. Hereupon they beckon'd to the savages to keep back, which they accordingly did; but, at their retreat, they let fly about 50 arrows among us, and very much wounded one of our men in the long boat. I call'd to them not to fire upon any account, but handing them down some deal boards, the carpenters made them a kind of fence to shield them from the arrows. In half an hour after, they came so near a stern of us, that we had a perfect sight of them; then they row'd a little farther out, till they came directly broad side with us, and then approach'd so near us they could hear us speak. This made me order all our men to keep close, and get their guns ready; in the mean time I order'd *Friday* to go out upon deck, and ask them in his language what they meant. No sooner did he do so, but six of the savages, who were in the foremost canoe, stooping down, shew'd us their naked backsides, as much as to say in *English*, kiss our ———; but *Friday* quickly knew what this meant, by immediately crying out they were going to shoot; unfortunat-

ly for him poor creature! who fell under a cloud of three hundred arrows, no less than seven piercing through his body, killing one of the best of servants, and faithfullest of companions in all my solitudes and afflictions.

So enraged was I at the death of poor *Friday*, that I ordered the guns, which were charged before only with powder to frighten them, to be loaded with small shot; nor did the gunners fail in their aim, but, at this broadside, split and overset thirteen or fourteen of their canoes, no doubt killed several of them, and set the rest a swimming: The others, frightened out of their wits, little regarding their fellows a drowning, scoured away as fast as they could; but our men took up one poor wretch, swimming for his life, an hour after. He was so fullen at first, that he would neither eat nor speak; but I took a way to cure him, by ordering them to throw him into the sea, which they did, and then he came swimming to them like a cork; calling, in his tongue, I suppose, to save him. So we took him on board, but it was a long time before we could make him speak or understand *English*; yet, when we taught him, he told us, they were going with their kings to fight a great battle: And when we asked him what made them come up to us? He said, *To makee de great wonder look*. By which it is to be noted, that these natives, and those of *Africa*, always add two E's at the end of *English* words, as *makee takee*, and the like, which it is a very difficult thing to break them of.

And now being under sail, I cannot but take my last farewell of poor honest *Friday*! And indeed we interred him with all possible decency and solemnity, by putting him into a coffin, and committing him to the deep, at the same time causing eleven guns to be fired for him: And thus ended the life of one of the most grateful, faithful, honest, and affectionate servants, that ever any man was blest with in the world.

Having now a fair wind for *Brazil*, in about twelve days time, we made land in the latitude of five degrees south of the line. Four days we kept on S. by E. in sight of the shore, when we made Cape *St. Augustine*, and, in three days, we came to an anchor off the bay of *All Saints*. But it was with great difficulty I obtained leave to hold correspondence here on shore; for neither the figure of my partner, my two merchant trustees, nor the fame of my wonderful preservation in the island, could procure me that favour, till such time as the Prior of the Monastery of the *Augustines* (to whom I had given 500 moidores) obtained leave from the Governour for me personally, with the captain, and one more, together with eight sailors, to come on shore, and, upon this condition, that we should not land any goods out of the ship, or carry any person away without licence? But, however, with difficulty, I got on shore three bales of *English* goods; as fine broad cloth, stuffs, and some linen,  
which

which I brought as a present for my partner; who had sent me on board a present of fresh provisions, wine, and sweet meats, worth above thirty moidores, including some tobacco, and three or four fine gold medals.

And now I delivered my partner, in goods, to the value of £100 *sterling*, and obliged him to set up the sloop I brought for the use of my island, in order to send them refreshments: Nor did he fail in this, but had the vessel finished in a few days, to the master of which I gave particular instructions to find the place. I soon loaded him with a small cargo, and one of my sailors offered to settle there, upon my letter to the *Spanish* Governour, if I would allot him tools and a plantation. This I willingly granted, and gave him the savage we had taken prisoner to be his slave. All things being ready for the voyage, my old partner told me, there was an acquaintance of his, a *Brasil* planter, who having fallen under the displeasure of the church, and in the fear of the inquisition, which obliged him to be concealed, would be glad of such an opportunity to make his escape, with his wife and two daughters; and if I would allot them a plantation in my island, he would give them a small flock to begin with, for that the officers had already seized his effects and estate, and left him nothing but a little household stuff and two slaves. This request I presently granted, concealing him and his family on board our ship, till such time as the sloop (where all the effects were) was got out of the bay, and then we put them on board, who carried them some materials and plants for planting sugar canes along with them. By this sloop, among other things, I sent my subjects three milch cows, and five calves, about 22 hogs, three sows big with pig, two mares and a stallion. I also engaged three *Portuguese* women to go for the sake of the *Spaniards*, which, with the persecuted man's two daughters, were sufficient, since the rest had wives of their own, though in another country: All which cargo arrived safe, no doubt, to their exceeding comfort; who, with this addition, were about sixty or seventy people, besides children.

Here it was that my truly honest and pious clergyman left me; for a ship being ready to set sail for *Lisbon*, he asked me leave to go thither; but I assure you it was with the greatest reluctance I parted from such a person, whose virtue and piety merited the greatest esteem.

When we sailed from the *Brasils*, we made directly over the *Atlantic* ocean to the *Cape of Good Hope*, having a tolerable good voyage, steering for the most part S. E. We were on a trading voyage, and had a supercargo on board, who was to direct all the ship's motions after she arrived at the *Cape*; only being limited to a certain number of days for stay, by charter party, at the several ports she was to go to; but all this be-  
longed

longed to my nephew the captain, and the supercargo, and was none of my business. At the Cape we only took in fresh water, and then sailed for the coast of *Coromandel*, being informed that a *French* man of war of fifty guns, and two large merchant ships were sailed for the *Indies*, but we heard no more of them.

The first place we touched at was the island of *Madagascar*; where, though the inhabitants are naturally fierce and treacherous, formidably armed with bows and lances; yet, for some time they treated us civilly enough; and, in exchange of knives, scissars, and other trifles, they brought us eleven good fat bullocks, which we took partly for present fresh victuals, and the remainder to salt for the ship's use.

So curious was I to view every corner of the world where I came to, that I went on shore as often as I could; when one evening, numbers of the people stood gazing at us at a distance, yet we thought ourselves in no danger, because they had used us kindly. However, we cut three boughs out of a tree, sticking them at a distance from us, which, it seems, in that country, is not only a token of truce and amity, but, when poles or boughs are set up on the other side, it is a sign the truce is accepted: Yet there is one thing to be regarded, that neither party must come beyond one another's three poles or boughs; so that the middle space is not only secure, but is also allowed like a market for traffick and commerce. They stick up their lances and javelins at the first poles, and come on unarmed; but, if any violence is offered, away they run to their poles, take up their weapons, and then the truce is at an end. One evening it happened, when we went on shore, a greater number of people than usual, both men and women, honestly traded among us for such toys as we had, with such great civility, that we made us a little tent of large boughs of trees, some of the men resolving to lie on shore all night. But, for my part, I and some others took our lodging in the boat, with boughs of trees spread over it, having a sail spread at the bottom to lie upon; when, about two o'clock in the morning, we heard the firing of five muskets, as also our men crying out for help, or else they should all be murdered: Nor scarce had we time to get the boat ashore, but that our men came and plunged themselves into the water, having above four hundred men at their heels: We took up seven of the men, three of them very much wounded, and one left behind killed, while the enemy poured their arrows so thick among us, that we were forced to make a barricade, with boards lying at the side of the boat, to shield us from danger: And having got ready our fire arms, we returned them a volley, which no doubt wounded several of them, as we could hear by their cries. In this condition we lay till break of day, and then, making signals of distress



distress to the ship, which my nephew, the captain, heard and understood, he weighed anchor, and stood as near the shore as possible, and then sent another boat with ten hands in her to assist us; but we called to them not to come near, informing them of our unhappy condition: However they ventured, when one of the men taking the end of a tow-line in his hand, and keeping our boat between him and our adversaries, swam on board us, and made fast the line to our boat; upon this slipping our cables, they towed us out of the reach of their arrows, and quickly after a broadside was given them from the ship, which made a most dreadful havoc among them. But when we had got on board, and examined into the occasion of this fray, the men who fled informed us, that an old woman, who sold milk within the poles, had brought a young woman with her, who carried roots or herbs; the sight of whom so much tempted our men, that they offered rudeness to the maid, at which the old woman set up a great cry; nor would the sailors part from their prize, but carried her among the trees, while the old woman went and brought a whole army down upon them. At the beginning of the attack one of our men was killed with a lance, and the fellow who began the mischief, paid dear enough for his mistress, though as yet we did not know what became of him, but the rest got free. The third night after the action, being curious to understand how affairs stood, I took the supercargo, and twenty stout fellows with me, and landed about two hours before midnight, at the same place where those *Indians* stood the night before; and there we divided our men into two bodies, the boatswain commanding one, and I the other. It was so dark, that we could see nobody; neither did we hear any voice near us; but by and by the boatswain falling over a dead body, we consented to halt till the moon began to rise, which we knew would be in an hour after; and then we perceived two and thirty bodies upon the ground, whereof two were not quite dead. Satisfied with this discovery, I was going on board again; but the boatswain, and the rest, told me they would make a visit to the *Indian* town where those dogs, so the called them, resided, asking me at the same time to go along with them: that they did not doubt, besides getting a good booty, but they should find *Tom Jeffery* there, for that was the unhappy man we missed. But I utterly refused to go, and commanded them back, as being unwilling to hazard their lives, the safety of the ship wholly depending upon them. Upon which, in short, they all left me but one, and the supercargo: So we returned to the boat where a boy was left, telling them we would stay for those that returned, though we supposed that most of them would run the same fate of *Tom Jeffery*. To this they replied, *Go ye boys, come along, we'll warrant we'll come off safe enough*; and

so away they went, notwithstanding all my admonitions, either concerning their own safety, or the preservation of the ship. Indeed they were gallantly armed, every man having a musket, bayonet, and a pistol, besides cutlasses, hangers, poleaxes, and hand granades. They came to a few *Indian* houses at first; but, not being the town they expected, they went farther, and finding a cow tied to a tree, they concluded that would be a sufficient guide to them, and so it proved; for after they untied her, she led them directly to the town, which consisted of above two hundred houses, several families living in some of the huts together. Here, being all in a profound sleep, the sailors consulted to divide themselves into three bodies, and set three parts of the town on fire at once; to kill those that were escaping, and plunder the rest of the houses. Thus desperately resolved, they went to work; but the first party had not gone far, before they called out to the rest, that they had found *Tom Jeffery*; whereupon they all ran up to the place, and found the poor fellow indeed, hanging up naked by one arm, and his throat almost cut from ear to ear: In a house that was hard by the tree, they found 16 or 17 *Indians* who had been concerned in the fray, two or three of them being wounded, who were not gone to sleep; this house they set on fire first, and quickly, five or six places more in the town appeared in flames, which they occasioned by wild fire, as the fittest to burn their thatches, consisting of flags or rushes: and no sooner did the affrighted creatures run out to save their lives, but they were either driven back into the flames by the sailors, or killed without mercy. After the boatswain had slain two with his pole-axe, he threw a hand-granade into the house, which, soon bursting, made a terrible havock, killing and wounding most of them; and neither their king, nor any of his train, who were in that house, escaped their fury, but they were every creature smothered and burnt together. All this while they never fired a gun, lest the people should waken faster than they could overpower them. But they awaked fast enough, which obliged our fellows to keep together in bodies. And by this time the whole town was in a flame, yet their fury rather increased, calling out to one another to remember *Tom Jeffery*. The terrible light of this conflagration made me very uneasy, and roused my nephew the captain, and the rest of his men, not knowing any thing of the matter. But when he perceived the dreadful smoke ascending in the clouds, and heard the guns go off, which made him conclude his men in danger, he takes another boat, and comes on shore himself with 13 men well armed: Nor was he less surprized to see me and two men only in the boat; but though I argued with him, as I did with his men, about the danger of the voyage, the interest of the merchants and owners, and the safety of the ship; yet

yet my nephew was like the rest, declaring, that he would rather lose the ship, his voyage, his life and all, than his men should be lost for want of help; and so away he went. For my part, seeing him resolved to go, I had not power to stay behind him: He ordered the pinnace back again for twelve men more; and then we marched directly as the flame guided us. But surely never was such a scene of horreur beheld, nor more dismal cries heard before, except at the time of that vile traitor and usurper *Oliver Cromwell's* taking *Drogheda* in *Ireland*, where he neither spared man, woman or child.

The first object, I think, we met with, was the ruins of one of their habitations, before which lay four men and three women killed, and two burnt to death among the fire, which was now decaying. Nothing could appear more barbarous than this revenge; none more cruel than the authors of it. As we went on, the fire increased, and the cry proceeded in proportion: Nor had we gone much farther, but we beheld three naked women, followed by sixteen or seventeen men, flying with the greatest swiftness from our men, who shot one of them in our sight: When they perceived us, whom they supposed would be their murderers, they set up a most dreadful shriek, and two swooned away in the fright. Here was such a sight, as might surely soften the hardest heart; and, in pity, we took means to let them know we would not hurt them; while the poor creatures, with bended knees and lift up hands, made piteous lamentations to us to save their lives. I ordered our men not to hurt any of the poor creatures whatsoever; but, being willing to understand the occasion of all this, I went among these unhappy wretches, who neither understood me, nor I believe the meaning themselves. Hereupon, being resolved to go into the middle of the town through the fire, in order to put an end to this barbarity, I ordered the men to follow me; but I had scarce spoke the word, before the boatswain came up, with four of our men at his heels, covered with blood and dust, seeking more people to massacre; upon which, calling out to them, we made them understand who we were, and they came up to us, setting up a halloo of triumph, in token that more help was come. Noble captain, said he to my nephew, I'm glad you'r come; we have not half done with these villanous hell hound dogs, we'll root out the very nation of them from the earth, and kill more than poor *Tom* has hairs upon his head: And thus he went on till I interrupted him. Blood thirsty dog! said I, will your cruelty never end? I charge you touch not one creature more; stop your hands and stand still, or you'r a dead man this moment. Why, Sir, said he, you neither know who you are protecting, or what they have done; but pray come hither, and behold an object of compassion, if such merit your clemency; and with that  
he

he shewed me the poor fellow, with his throat cut, hanging upon the tree.

Indeed here was enough to fill their breasts with rage, which, however, I thought had gone too far, agreeable to these words of *Jacob* to his sons, *Simeon* and *Levi*: *Curst be their anger for it was fierce, and their wrath, for it was cruel.* But this sight made my nephew and the rest as bad as they; nay, my nephew declared, his concern was only for his men; as for the people, not a soul of them ought to live. Hereupon away ran the boatswain and eight more to finish the tragedy; which being out of my power to prevent, I pensively returned back, both from the dismal sight, and the piteous cries of those unfortunate creatures, who were made victims to their fury. Nor was it a less piece of folly in me to return to the boat with a few others, having narrowly escaped forty armed *Indians*, who had been alarmed by the conflagration; but, having missed the place where they stood, I got to the boat, accompanied with the supercargo, and so went on board, sending the pinnace back again, to assist the men in what might happen. When I had got to the boat, the fire was almost extinguished, and the noise abated; but I had scarce been half an hour on board the ship, when I heard another volley given by our sailors, and a great smoke, which, as I afterwards found, was our men falling upon those houses and persons that stood between them and the sea; but here they spared the wives and children, and killed about sixteen or seventeen men. And so they came strolling down to the pinnace, which, at that time was gotten on shore to receive them. Not a man of them had received the least hurt, except two, one of whom strained his foot, and the other burnt his hand a little, having met with no resistance, the poor *Indians* being unprepared, amazed and confounded.

Indeed I was extremely angry with every one of them, but particularly the Captain; who, instead of cooling the rage of the men, had prompted them on to farther mischief: Nor could he make any other excuse, but that, as he was a man, he could not master his passions, at the sight of one of his men so cruelly murdered. As for the rest, knowing they were not under my command, they took no notice of my anger, but rather boasted of their revenge; and, according to all their accounts, they killed or destroyed about 150, men women and children, besides burning the town to ashes. They took their companion *Tom Jeffery* from the tree, covered him with some of the ruins, and so left him. But, however justifiable this action of our men might seem to themselves, yet I always openly condemned it, with the appellation of the massacre of *Madagascar*: For though they had slain this *Jeffery*, yet he was certain the first aggressor, by attempting to violate the chastity of a young

a young innocent woman, who ventured down to them on the faith of the public capitulation, which was so treacherously broken.

We were now under sail, when the boatswain would defend this bloody action, by saying, That the *Indians* had broke the truce, the night before, by shooting one of our men without just provocation : And what if the poor fellow had taken a little liberty with the wench, he ought not to have been murdered in so villanous a manner ; and that they had acted nothing but what the divine laws commissioned to be done to such homicides. However, I was in the same mind as before, telling them that they were murderers, and bid him depend upon it, that God would blast their voyage for so unparalleled a piece of barbarity.

When we came into the gulph of *Persia*, five of our men who ventured on shore, were either killed, or made slaves by the *Arabians*, the rest of them having scarce time to escape to their boat. This made me upbraid them afresh with the just retribution of heaven for such actions : Upon which the boatswain very warmly asked me, whether those men on whom the tower of *Siloam* fell, were greater sinners than the rest of the *Galileans* ? And besides, Sir, said he, none of these five poor men that are lost, were with us at the massacre of *Madagascar*, as you call it, and therefore your reprehension is very unjust, and your application improperly applied. Besides, added he, you are continually using the men very ill upon this account, and being but a passenger yourself, we are not obliged to bear it ; nor can we tell what ill designs you may have to bring us to judgment for it in *England* ; and therefore if you don't leave this discourse, and not concern yourself with any of our affairs, I will leave the ship, and not sail in such a dangerous company.

All this I heard very patiently, till at length I told him what concern I had on board was none of his business ; that, however, I was a considerable owner of the ship, and therefore had a right to speak in common, and that I was no way accountable to him, nor to any body else. Well, this past on, and I thought all had been over. At this time we were in the road of *Bengal* ; where, going on shore with the supercargo one day towards evening, as I was preparing to go on board, one of the men came to me, and told me, I need not trouble myself to come to the boat, for that the cockswain and others had ordered him not to carry me on board any more. This insolent message much surpris'd me, yet I gave him no answer to it, but went directly, and acquainted the supercargo, entreating him to go on board, and, by acquainting the captain with it, to prevent the mutiny which I perceived would happen. But, before I had spoke this, the matter was effected on board : For,

no sooner was I gone off in the boat, but the boatswain, gunner, carpenter, and all the inferior officers, came to the quarter deck, desiring to speak with the captain; and there it was the boatswain made a long harangue, exclaiming against me as before mentioned; that if I had not gone peaceably for my own diversion, they would have compelled me by violence for their satisfaction; that, as they had shipped with the captain, so they would faithfully serve him; but, if I did not quit the ship, or the captain oblige me to it, they would leave the ship immediately: Hereupon, turning his face about by way of signal, they all cried out, One and All, one and All.

You may be sure, that though my nephew was a man of great courage, yet he could not but be surpris'd at their sudden and unexpected behaviour: And, though he talked stoutly to them, and afterwards expostulated with them that, in common justice to me, who was a considerable owner in the ship, they could not turn me out, as it were out of my own house, which might bring their lives in danger should they ever be taken in *England*: Nay, though he invited the boatswain on shore to accommodate matters with me, yet all this, I say, signified nothing: They would have nothing to do with me: And they were resolv'd to go on shore if I came on board. Well, said my nephew, if you are so resolv'd, permit me to talk with him, and then I have done: And so he came to me, giving me an account of their resolution, how one and all designed to forsake the ship if I came on board, for which he was mightily concern'd. I am very glad to see you, nephew, said I, and rejoice it is no worse, since they have not rebelled against you: I only desire you to send my necessary things on shore, with a sufficient sum of money, and I will find my way to *England* as well as I can. Though this griev'd my nephew to the heart, yet there was no remedy but compliance, and, in short, going on board, all my necessaries were sent me, and so this matter was over in a few hours.

I think I was now near a thousand leagues farther off *England* by sea, than at my little kingdom, except this difference, that I might travel by land over the *Great Mogul's* country to *Surat*, from thence up to *Basora* by sea up the *Persian* gulph, then take the way of the caravans over the *Arabian* desert to *Aleppo* and *Scandaroon*, there take shipping to *Italy*, and so travel by land into *France*, and from thence cross the sea to *England*.

My nephew left me two persons to attend me, one of them was his servant, and the other clerk to the purser, who engaged to be mine. I took lodgings in an *English* woman's house, where several *French*, one *English*, and two *Italian* merchants resided. The handsome entertainment I met with here, occasioned me to stay nine months, considering what course

course I should take. I had some *English* goods, with me, of great value, besides a 1000 pieces of eight, and a letter of credit for more, if there were occasion. The goods I soon disposed of to advantage, and bought here several good diamonds, which I could easily carry about me. One morning the *English* merchant came to me, and, being very intimate together, countryman, said he, I have a project to communicate to you, which I hope will suit to both our advantage: To be short, Sir, we are both in a remote part of the world from our country; but yet in a place where men of business may get a great deal of money. Now if you will put a thousand pounds to my thousand pounds we will hire a ship to our satisfaction; you shall be captain, I'll be merchant, and we'll go a trading voyage to *China*; for why should we lie still like drones, when all the world is in continual motion?

This proposal soon got my consent, being very agreeable to my rambling genius; and the more so, because I looked upon my countryman to be a very sincere person: It required some time before we could get a vessel to our minds, and sailors to man it accordingly: At length, we got an *English* mate, boatswain and gunner, a *Dutch* carpenter, and three *Portuguese* foremast men, and, for want of others, made shift with *Indian* seamen. From hence we first sailed to *Ashin*, in the island of *Sumatra*, and then to *Siam*, where we bartered our wares for some arrack and opium, the last of which bore a great price among the *Chinese*: In a word, we went up to *Suskam*, making a very great voyage; and after eight months time, I returned to *Bengal*, very well satisfied with this adventure, having not only gotten a sufficient sum of money, but an insight of getting a great deal more.

The next voyage my friend proposed to me, was to go among the spice islands, and bring home a load of cloves from the *Manillas*, or thereabouts; islands belonging partly to *Spain*, but yet places where the *Dutch* trade very much. We were not long preparing for this voyage, which we made no less successful than the last, touching at *Borneo*, and several other places which I do not perfectly remember, returning home in about five months time. We soon sold our spices, which were chiefly cloves, and some nutmegs, to a *Persian* merchant, who carried them away for the gulf; and in short, making five to one advantage, we were loaded with money.

Not long after my friend and I had made up our accounts, to our entire satisfaction, there came in a *Dutch* coaster, from *Batavia*, of above two hundred ton. All the men pretended themselves so ill, that there were not hands sufficient to undertake a voyage, and the captain being, forsooth, willing to go to *Europe*, public notice was given that the ship was to be sold. No sooner did this come to our ears, but we bought the ship, paid

paid the master, and took possession. We would also very willingly have entertained some of the men; but they, having received their share of the booty, were not to be found; being fled all together, to *Agra*, the city of the great *Mogul's* residence; and from thence were to travel to *Surat*, and so by sea to the *Persian* gulph. And indeed they had reason to fly in this manner; for the truth of it was, the pretended captain, was the gunner only, and not the commander; that, having been a trading voyage, they were attacked on shore by the *Mallayans*, who killed three men and the captain; after whose death, the other eleven men, running away with the ship to the bay of *Bengal*, left the mate and five men more on shore, of whom you will hear in the sequel.

Let them come by the ship how they will, we thought we bought it honestly; neither did we suspect any thing of the matter, when the man shewed us a bill of sale for the ship (undoubtedly forged) to one *Emanuel Closterbowen*, which name he went by. And so, without any more to do, we picked up some *Dutch* and *English* seamen, resolving for another voyage for cloves among the *Philippine* and *Molucca* islands; and, in short, we continued thus five or six years, trading from port to port with extraordinary success; and was now, in the seventh and last year, going in the ship with my partner to *China*, designing to touch at *Siam*, and buy some rice by the way. But in this voyage, contrary winds beat us up and down for a considerable time among the islands in the straits of *Molucca*; and no sooner were we clear of these rugged seas, but we perceived our ship had sprung a leak, which obliged us to put into the river *Cambodia*, which lies northward of the gulph, and goes up to *Siam*.

One day as I was on shore refreshing myself, there comes an *Englishman* to me, who was a gunner's mate on board an *English East-India* ship, riding up the river, near the city of *Cambodia*. Sir, said he, you may wonder at my business, having never seen me in your life; but though I am a stranger, I have something to tell you that very nearly concerns you; and indeed, it is the imminent danger you are in has moved me to give you this timely notice. Danger! said I, what danger? I know of none, except my ship being leaky, for which I design to have her run aground to-morrow morning. Sir, said he, I hope you'll be better employed, when you shall hear what I have to say to you. You know the town of *Cambodia* is about 15 leagues up this river; and about three leagues on this side, there lie two *Dutch*, and three *English* ships; and would you venture here, without considering what strength you had to engage them? I knew not what he meant by this discourse; and, turning short upon him, Sir, said I, I know no reason I have to be afraid either of any *English* or *Dutch* ships; I am no interloper,



interloper, and what business have they then with me? Well, Sir, said the man, if you do think yourself secure, all I can say is, you must take your chance: However, I am very sorry you are so deaf to good advice; but I assure you, if you don't put to sea immediately, you will be attacked by five long-boats full of men, hanged yourself for a pirate, if you are taken, and the particulars examined afterwards. I thought, Sir, added he, I might have met with a better reception for such a singular piece of service. Sir, said I, I never was ungrateful to any man; but pray explain yourself and I'll go on board this minute, whether the leak be stopped or no. Why, Sir, said he, to be short, because time is precious, the matter is this: You know well enough that you were with the ship at *Sumatra*, where your captain was murdered by the *Malayans*, with three of his sailors, and that either you, or some who were on board you, ran away with the ship, and are since turned pirates at sea. Now, Sir, this is the sum of what I had to say; and I can positively assure you, that if you be taken, you will be executed without much ceremony; for, undoubtedly, you cannot but be sensible what little law merchant ships shew to pirates, whenever they fall into their unmerciful hands. Sir, said I, I thank you for your kind information, and though I am sure no man could come more honestly by the ship than I have done; yet, satisfied with your honest intention, and knowing their designs, I'll be upon my defence. Pruthee, Sir, said the man, don't talk of being upon your defence; the best that you can make, is to be out of danger; and therefore, if you have any regard for your life, and the lives of your men, take the advantage, without fail, of putting out to sea at high water; by which means, as you have a whole tide before you, you will be gone too far out of their reach before they can come down; and so, by the tide (not reckoning the length) you will get two hours of them; and as they are only boats, consequently they will not venture (especially if the wind blows) to follow you far out to sea.

I am mighty well satisfied, said I, in this particular, and of your kindness, which merits my greatest esteem: Pray, Sir, what amends shall I make you? He replied, I know not what amends you are willing to make, because you may have some doubts of its certainty; but, to convince you of the truth of what I say, I have one offer to make unto you. On board one of the *English* ships, I have nineteen months pay due to me; and this *Dutchman* that is with me, has seven months pay due to him, which, if you will make good to us, we will go along with you. And should you find nothing more in it, why then we will desire no more; but when you are convinced that we have saved the ship, your life, and the lives of the men, we will leave the rest to your generosity.

So reasonable did this every way appear, as to obtain my immediate consent, and so we went on board immediately. As soon as we came on board, my partner calls joyfully out, that they had stopped the leak! Well, thank God, said I, but pray let us weigh anchor immediately. Weigh! said he, what is the meaning of this hurry! Pray, said I, ask no questions, but all hands to work without losing a moment's time: Upon which, the captain was called in great haste, who ordered the anchor to be got up immediately; and, though the tide was not quite down, yet being assisted with a little land breeze, we stood out to sea: And then it was, that calling my partner into the cabin, I related the story at large, which was confirmed, and more amplified by the two men I had brought on board. But scarce had we finished our discourse upon this head, but a sailor came to the cabin door, with a message from the captain, that we were chased by five sloops full of armed men. Very well, said I, it is plain now there is something in it. And so, going upon deck, I told the men there was a design for seizing the ship, and consequently executing us for pirates; and asked them, whether they would faithfully stand by us, and one another? To which they unanimously replied, that they would fight for us to the last drop of their blood. And when I asked the captain which way he thought best for us to manage the battle; Sir, said he, the only method is to keep them off with our great shot as long we are able, and then have recourse to our small arms; and when both these fail us, then to retire to close quarters, when perhaps the enemy, wanting materials, can neither break open our bulk-heads, or get in upon us. In the mean time, the gunner was ordered to bring two guns to bear fore and aft out of the steerage, and to load them with musket bullets and small pieces of old iron; and thus, the deck being cleared, we were prepared for the engagement, still keeping out to sea. But yet the boats followed us with all the sail they could make; and we could perceive the two foremost were *English*, which outailed the rest by two leagues, and which we found would come up with us: Hereupon we fired a gun without ball, intimating that they should bring too, and we put out a flag of truce, as a signal for parley? but, finding them crowding after us, till they came within a shot, we took in our white, and hanging out the red flag, immediately fired at them with ball; and then we called to them with a speaking trumpet, bidding them to keep off at their peril.

But all this signified nothing to them, who, depending upon the strength that followed them, were resolutely bent for mischief: Hereupon I ordered them to bring the ship too, by which means, they lying upon our broadside, we let fly at them at once, one of whom carried away the stern of the hindermost boat, and obliged them not only to take down  
their

their sail, but made them all run to the head of the boat to keep her from sinking : and so she lay by, having enough of it ; and, in the mean time, we prepared to meet the foremost boat in the same manner. But, while we were doing this, one of the three hindermost boats made up to the relief of that which was disabled, and took the men out of her. Hereupon we called again to parley with them, but, instead of an answer, one of the boats came close under our stern ; whereupon our gunner let fly his two chase guns, but missing, the men in the boat shouted, and waving their caps, came on with fury ; but, to repair his seeming disgrace, soon got ready ; and, firing the second time, this shot, we could perceive, did a great deal of execution among the men ; but, taking no notice of it, we wore ship again, bringing one quarter to bear upon them ; when, firing three guns more, we found the boat a sinking, and several men already in the sea. Hereupon, immediately manning our pinnace, I gave orders to save some of the men from drowning, and instantly come on board, because the rest of their boats were approaching. They accordingly did so, and took up three of them, one of whom was almost past recovery ; and then, crowding all the sail we could, after our men came on board, we stood out farther to sea, so that the other three boats gave over their chase, when they came up to the first two. And thus, delivered from imminent danger, we changed our course to the eastward, quite out of the course of all *European* ships.

Being now at sea, and enquiring more particularly of the two seamen the meaning of all this ; the *Dutchman* led us into the secret of it at once. He told us, That the fellow who sold us the ship was an errant thief, who had run away with her ; that the captain was treacherously murdered on the coast of *Malacca*, by the natives there, with three of his men ; that he, the *Dutchman*, and four more, being obliged to have recourse to the woods for their safety, at length escaped by means of a *Dutch* ship in the way to *China*, which had sent their boat on shore for fresh water : That, after this, he went to *Batavia*, where two of the seamen belonging to the ship (who had deserted the rest in their travels) arrived, and there gave an account, that the fellow, who ran away with the ship, had sold her at *Bengal* to a set of pirates, who went a cruising, and had already taken an *English* and two *Dutch* ships richly laden.

Now, though this was absolutely false, yet, concerning us directly, my partner truly said, that our deliverance was to be esteemed so much the more, by reason had we fallen into their hands, we could have expected nothing from them but immediate death, considering our accusers would have been our judges : And therefore his opinion was, to return directly to *Bengal*, where, being known, we could prove how honestly we came

came by the ship, of whom we bought her, and the like ; and where we were sure of some justice, not to be hanged first, and judged afterwards. And indeed I was at first of my partner's opinion ; but when I had more seriously considered of the matter, I told him, we ran a great hazard in attempting to return thither, being on the wrong side of the straits of *Malacca* ; and if, upon alarm given, we should be taken by the *Dutch* of *Batavia*, or *English* elsewhere, our running away would be a sufficient evidence to condemn ourselves. This danger indeed startled not only my partner, but all the ship's company ; and so we changed our former resolution to go to the coast of *Tonquin*, and so to that of *China* ; where pursuing our first design as to trade, we might dispose of the ship some way or other, and return in one of the country vessels. This being generally agreed to, we steered away N. N. E. above 50 leagues off the usual course to the east, which put us to some inconveniences, as the winds blowing more steadily against us, made us more tedious in our voyage, and consequently caused a more speedy decay of our provision ; and, what was still worse, we apprehended those ships, from whose boats we had escaped, being bound for, and got to *China* before us, might have given fresh information, which might create another vigorous pursuit. And lastly, when I considered I had never wronged or defrauded any person in my life, to be now pursued like a common thief, and, if taken, to be executed as such, according to what they should allege ; this thing grieved me to the highest degree (as it must all innocent men) and consequently made me more desirous of escaping from its infamous shame, than from death itself. It was very easy to read a sad dejection in my countenance upon this occasion : My mind was oppressed like those unhappy innocent persons, who, being overpowered by blasphemous and perjured evidences, wickedly resolved to take away their lives, or ruin their reputation, have no other recourse, in this world, to ease their unspeakable sorrow, but sighs, and prayers, and tears. My partner seeing me so concerned, encouraged me as well as he could ; and, after describing to me the several ports of that coast, told me he would either put in on the coast of *Cochinchina*, or else in the bay of *Tonquin*, and from thence go to *Macao*, a town once possessed by the *Portuguese*, and where there still resided many *European* families.

Well, to this place we steered our course, and early the next morning we came in sight of the coast. But, considering on past circumstances, we resolved to put into a small river, whereby we could know, either over the land, or by the ship's pinnace, what vessels were in any ports thereabouts ? And indeed this happy step was our certain deliverance ; the next morning there came to the bay of *Tonquin* two *Dutch* ships, and  
a third

a third without any colours spread; and, in the evening, two *Englſh* ſhips ſteered the ſame courſe. The river where we were, was but ſmall, within a few leagues of its limits northward: The country was wild and barbarous, and the people all thieves, having no correſpondence with any other nation, dealing only in fiſh, oil, and ſuch groſs commodities. One barbarous cuſtom they have, that when any veſſel is unhappily ſhipwrecked upon their coaſt, they make the men their priſoners or ſlaves; ſo that when we coaſted northeaſt, to the point of land which opens to the great bay of *Tonquin*, we found ourſelves ſurrounded by enemies both by ſea and land.

As the ſhip had been leaky before, we took the opportunity to cleaſe her in this place, and to ſtop up the places which let in the water. And when we had lightened her, and brought our guns, and other moveable things, to one ſide, we eſſayed to bring her down, that we might come at her bottom: But, upon ſecond conſideration, we cared not to let her lie on dry ground; neither indeed could we find a convenient place for it. The inhabitants, not uſed to ſuch a ſight, as to ſee a ſhip lie down on one ſide, and heel in towards ſhore, neither perceiving her men who were at work on her bottom, with ſtages and with boats on the off ſide, they preſently imagined the ſhip had been caſt away, and ſo lay on the ground. Agreeable to this ſuppoſition, they ſurrounded us with ten or twelve large boats, with a reſolution, undoubtedly, to plunder the ſhip, and to carry away thoſe they found alive, for ſlaves to their king. But when they perceived our men hard at work upon the ſhip's bottom and ſide, waſhing, graving, and ſtopping it, it filled them with ſuch ſurprize, that they ſtood gazing as though they were contounded. Neither could we imagine what their deſign was; however, for fear of danger, we handed down arms and ammunition to thoſe at work, in order to defend themſelves; and indeed this precaution was abſolutely neceſſary; for, in a quarter of an hour after, the natives concludiſg it was really a ſhipwreck, and that we were ſaving our lives and goods, which they thought belonged to them, came down to our men, as though it had been in a line of battle. Indeed we lay but in a very unſit poſture to fight; and, before the ſtages could be got down, or the men in the boat come on board as they were ordered, the *Cochineſes* were upon them, and two of their boats boarding our long boat, they began to lay hold of our men as priſoners. The fiſt they ſeized was a ſtout *Englſh* ſailor, who never fired his muſket, like a fool, as I imagined, but laid it down in the boat; but he knew what he was doing, for, by main force, he dragged the Pagan out of the boat into ours by the two eſers, and knocked his brains out againſt the boat's gunnel: A *Dutchman* that was next him, ſnatches up the muſket, and knocked down five more

with the but end of it : However, this was doing very little to their number ; but a strange, unexpected accident, which rather merits laughter, than any thing else, gave our men a complete victory over them.

It seems the carpenter, who was preparing to grave the outside of the ship, as well as to pay the seams where he caulked her, to stop the leaks, had gotten two kettles just let down in the boat, one filled with boiling pitch, and the other with rosin, tallow and o. l, and such stuff as the shipwrights use : The carpenter's man had a great iron ladle, with which he used to supply the workmen with hot stuff ; and, as two of the enemies entered the boat where the fellow stood, he saluted them with a ladleful of the hot boiling liquor, that, being half naked, made them roar again, and jump into the sea. Well done *Jack*, says the carpenter, give them t'other dose ; and so, leaping forward himself, takes a mop, and dipping it into the pitch-pot, he and his man flung it so plentifully among them, as none escaped being scalded : Upon which they all made the best of their way, crying and howling in such a frightful manner, that in all my adventures I never heard the like before. And, indeed, never was I better pleased with any conquest than I was with this, by reason there was so little blood shed, having an aversion to killing such savage wretches (more than was necessary) knowing they came on errands which their laws and customs made them think were just and equitable. By this time, all things being in order, and the ship swimming, they found their mistake, so they durst not venture a second attack. Thus ended our merry fight ; and having got some rice, bread, roots, and sixteen good hogs on board the day before, we set sail, not daring to go into the bay of *Tonquin*, but steered N. E. towards the isle of *Formosa*, as though we would go to the *Manillas*, or the *Philippine* islands, for fear of meeting with any *European* ships. When we anchored at the isle of *Formosa*, the inhabitants not only supplied us with provisions and fresh water, but dealt very fairly and honestly with us in their bargains and agreements. From this place we steered north, keeping still off the coast of *Cbina*, till we were beyond all the ports where *European* vessels usually come ; and at length, being come to the latitude of thirty degrees, we resolved to put into the first trading port we should come at ; and standing for the shore, a boat came off two leagues to us, with an old *Portuguese* pilot on board, who offering his service, we very gladly accepted him, and sent the boat back again. And now, having the old man on board, I talked to him of going to *Nanquin*, the most northward part of the coast of *Cbina*. What will you do there ? said he, smiling ; I told him we would sell our cargo, and purchase callicoes, raw and wrought silk, tea, &c. and so return the same way back. O, said he,  
you

you had better put in at *Macao*, where you may buy china wares as cheap as at *Nanquin*, and sell your opium at a greater advance. But, said I, we are gentlemen as well as merchants, and design to see the great city of *Pekin*, and the magnificent court of the monarch of *Cbina*. Why then, said he, you should go to *Ningpo*, where there is a navigable river that goes through the heart of that vast empire, two hundred and seventy leagues from the sea, which crosses all the rivers, passes considerable hills by the help of sluices and gate, and goes even up to the city of *Pekin*, and you may go to *Nanquin*, if you please, and travel to *Pekin*; there is a *Dutch* ship just before bound that way. At the name of a *Dutch* or *English* ship I was struck with confusion, they being as great a terror to me in this vessel, as an *Algerine* man of war is to them in the *Mediterranean*. The old man finding me troubled, Sir, said he, I hope the *Dutch* are not now at war with your nation: No, said I, but God knows what liberty they may take when out of the reach of the law. Why, says he, what occasion is there for peaceable merchants to fear? For, believe me, they never meddle with any but **PIRATES**.

At the mentioning the word *Pirates*, my countenance turned to scarlet, nor was it possible for me to conceal it from the old pilot, who taking notice of it, Sir, said he, *take what course you please, I'll do you all the service I can*. Signior, said I, I am a little concerned at your mentioning *Pirates*, I hope there are none in these seas, because you see in what a weak condition we are to defend ourselves. O Sir, said he, *if that's all, don't be concerned; I don't remember, one in these parts these fifteen years, except about a month ago, one was seen in the bay of Siam; but she is gone to the south; nor was she built for a privateer but was run away with, by a pirate captain, and some of his men, the right captain having been murdered by the Malayans*.

What, said I, (as though ignorant of what had happened) did they kill the captain? No, said he, 'tis thought the *Malayans*, murdered him, but perhaps they might procure them to do it, and therefore deserved hanging. They were lately discovered in the bay of *Siam*, in the river of *Cambodia*, by some *Dutchmen* who belonged to the ship, and had much ado to escape five boats that pursued them: But they have all given such an exact description of the ship, that wherever they find her, they will be sure to know her; and they have solemnly sworn to give them no quarter, but to hang them every one at the yard arm, without formally bringing them to a court of justice.

Being sensible that, having the old man on board, he could not do me any mischief. Well, Signior, said I, 'tis for this very reason I would have you carry us up to *Nanquin*, where neither *English* or *Dutch* ships come: And I must tell you their cap-

tains

tains are a parcel of rash, proud, insolent rascals, that neither know what belongs to justice, nor how to behave themselves as the laws of God and nature direct : Fellows that would prove murderers to punish robbers ; and take upon them to adjudge innocent men to death, without any plain proof to confirm their guilt ; but perhaps I may live to call them to account in a place where they may learn how justice should be executed. And so I told him the story of buying the ship : and how we were saved by the means of two men : That the murder of the captain by the *Malayans*, as also the running away with the ship, I believe to be true ; but that we who bought it were rurned pirates, was a mere fiction, to cover their cowardice and foolish behaviour when they attacked us ; and the blood of those men we killed in our own just defence lay at their door who sent them to attack us by surprize.

Sir, said the old man amazed, *you have taken the right course so steer to the north ; and, if I might advise you, I would have you sell your ship in China, and buy another in that country ; and I'll procure people to buy one and sell the other.* Well, but Signior, said I, if I sell the ship in this manner, I may bring some innocent persons into the same danger as I have gone through, perhaps worse, even death itself, whereby I should be as guilty of their murder as their villainous persecutors. *That need not trouble you,* said the old man, *I'll find a way to prevent that : For those commanders you talk of, I know very well, and I will inform them rightly of the matter, as you have related ; and I am persuaded they will not only believe me, but act more cautiously for the future.* And will you deliver one message from me to them ? *Yes,* said he, *if you will give it under your hand, that I may prove it is not my own invention.* Hereupon I wrote a large account of their attacking me in their long boats, the pretended reason and unjust design of it ; that they had done what they ought to be ashamed of, and could not answer, at any tribunal in *England*. But this letter was written in vain, providence ordering things another way. We sailed directly for *Nanquin*, and in about 13 days sail came to an anchor at the south west point of the great gulf of that place, where we learned, that two *Dutch* ships were gone the length before us, and that we should certainly fall into their hands. We were at a great loss in this exigency, and would very gladly have been on shore almost any where : But our old pilot told me, that if I would sail to the southward about 42 leagues, there was a little port called *Quinchang*, where no *European* ships ever came, and where we might consider what was further to be done. Accordingly we weighed anchor the next day, calling only twice on shore by the way to get fresh water. The country people very courteously sold us roots, tea, rice, fowls, and other provision. After five days sail, we came to the port, and landed  
with



with unspeakable joy. We resolved to dispose of ourselves and effects any way possible, rather than go on board that ill fated vessel again. For no state can be more miserable than a continual fear, which is a life of death, and a confounder of our understandings, that sets the imagination at work to form a thousand frightful things that may never happen. And indeed both my partner and I scarce slept a night without dreaming of halters, yard-arms, &c. of fighting and being taken, killing and being killed, nay, so violent were our apprehensions, that we would bruise our hands and heads against the cabin, as though actually engaged. The story of the *Dutch* cruelty at *Amboyna* often came into our waking thoughts; and, for my part I used to think my condition very bad, that after so many difficulties, and signal deliverances, I should be hanged in my old age, and innocent too; but then religion would seem to reprehend me, as though the voice of it had said, Consider, O man! the sins you have been formerly guilty, which now thou art called to account for, to expiate with thy blood! And as to thy innocence, what art thou more than thy blessed Redeemer, who suffered for thy offences, and to whose providence you ought to submit, let what will happen! After this my natural courage would inspire me to resist to the last, and rather to die than be taken by boorish rascally *Dutchmen*, who had arts to torment beyond the cruelty of death.

But now, thanks to kind Heaven, being ashore, our old pilot procured a lodging and a warehouse: It was a little hut, with a large warehouse adjoining, all built with canes, and pallisadoed round with large ones, to keep out the pilfering thieves, which are very numerous in that country: But the magistrates allowed us a little guard, besides we employed a sentry with a kind of halbert, for three pence a day. The fair or mart had been over some time; however there remained in the river four junks and two *Japan* ships, the merchants of the latter being ashore. In the first place, our old pilot brought us acquainted with three *Romish* missionaries, who were converting the *Chinese* to Christianity; two of them were reserved, rigid and austere, applying themselves to the work they came about with great earnestness; but the third, a *Frenchman*, called Father *Simon*, was of a freer conversation, yet not a worse Christian than the other two, one of whom was a *Portuguese*, and the other a *Genoese*: But Father *Simon*, it seems, was appointed to go to *Pekin*, the residence of the Emperor of *China*, and only waited for another priest, who was ordered from *Macao* to accompany him. We scarce met, but he was prompting me to go with him: Sir, said he, I will shew you the glorious things of this mighty empire, and a city, the city of *Pekin*, far exceeding *London* or *Paris*, put them both together. One day particularly, being at dinner with him, I shewed some inclination

clination to go, which made him press me the more, and my partner also, to gain our consent: But father, said my partner, what satisfaction can you have in our company, when you esteem us heretics, consequently objects not worth your regard? Oh, said he, you may be as good Catholics in time, as those I hope to convert. And so, said he, we shall have you preaching to us all the way, instead of pleasing us with description of the country. Sir, said he, however our religion may be vilified, 'tis very certain it neither divests us of good manners or Christian charity; and as we are gentlemen, as such we may converse, without making one another uneasy.

But, to leave him awhile, let us consider our ship and merchandize, that we had to dispose of. There was but little business in the place where we were; and once I was resolved to sail to the river *Kilam*, and so to the city of *Nanquin*; but Providence ordered it otherwise, by our old pilot's bringing a Jew merchant to us, to see what goods we had. He immediately bought our opium, for which he gave us a very good price in gold by weight, some wedges of which weighed above 10 or 11 ounces. It came into my head, that he might buy the ship too; and I ordered his interpreter to propose it to him. He said nothing then, but shrunk up his shoulders; yet in a few days after he came, accompanied by a missionary priest, who was his interpreter, with this proposal, that as he had bought a great quantity of our goods, he had not money enough to purchase our ship; but, if I pleased, he would hire her, with all my men, to go to *Japan*, and send them with another loading to the *Philippine* islands, the freight of which he would willingly pay to us before; and at their return to *Japan*, would buy the ship. Upon this we asked the captain and his men, if they were willing to go to *Japan*; to which they unanimously agreed. While this was in agitation, the young man whom my nephew left to attend me, told me, that as I did not care to accept this prospect of advantage, he would manage it for me as I pleased, and render me a faithful account of his success, which should be wholly mine. Indeed I was very unwilling to part with him; but as it might turn to his advantage, I discoursed my partner about it, who, of his own accord, gave him his share of the vessel, so that I could not do otherwise than give him mine; but, however, we let him have but the property of half of it, and preserved a power, that when we met in *England*, if he had obtained success, he should account to us for one half of the profits of the ship's freight, and the other should be his own. Thus having taken a writing under his hand, away he sailed to *Japan*, where the merchant dealt honestly by him, got him a licence to go on shore, sent him loaded to the *Philippines* with their supercargo, came back again with *European* goods, cloves, and other spices;

and,

and, in short, he got a great deal of money; nor would he sell his ship, but traded on his own account, went back to the *Manillas*, where getting acquaintance he made his ship free, was then hired by the governour to go to *Acapulco* in *America*, on the *Mexican* coast, with a licence to travel to that great city; and this gained him immense treasure, and finding means to get to *Jamaica*, he returned nine years after exceedingly rich to *England*.

In parting with the ship it comes in course to consider of those men who saved our lives in the river of *Cambodia*: and though, by the way, they were a couple of rogues, who thought to turn pirates themselves: yet we paid them what they at first demanded, and gave each a small sum of money, making the *Englisman* a gunner, and the *Dutchman* a boatswain, with which they were very well contented.

We were now above 1000 leagues farther from home, than when at *Bengal*. All the comfort we could expect was, that there being another fair in a month's time, we might not only purchase all sorts of the country manufactures, but very possibly find some *Chinese* junks or vessels from *Tonquin*, to be sold, which would carry us and our goods wherever we pleased. Upon these hopes, we resolved to continue; and to divert ourselves, took several little journies into the country. Ten days we travelled to see the city of *Nanquin*, about lat. 30. N. which is regularly built, the streets exactly strait, crossing each other in direct lines, which makes it shew to great advantage. At our return, we found the priest was come from *Macao* that was to go with Father *Simon* to *Pekin*. That Father earnestly solicited me to accompany him, and I referred him to my partner. In short we both agreed to it, and prepared accordingly. Nor did we fail meeting with great advantage, as to finding the way, having the liberty to travel among the retinue of a Mandarin, who is a principal magistrate, and much revered by the people.

We were 25 days travelling through this miserable country, infinitely populous, but as indifferently cultivated; but their pride is infinitely greater than their poverty, insomuch that even their priests deride them. As we passed the house of one of their country gentlemen, two leagues off *Nanquin*, we had the honour to ride with the *Chinese* Iquire about two miles. Never was Don *Quixote* so exactly imitated, never such a compound of pomp and poverty seen before.

His habit, made of callico, was dirty, greasy, and very proper for a *Merry Andrew*, with all its tawdry trappings, as hanging sleeves, tallels, &c. but torn in every part: His vest underneath it was no cleaner, but more greasy. His horse (worse than *Rohante* or the famous steed of the doughty *Hudibrass*) was a poor, starved, decrepid thing, that would not  
sell

sell for thirty shillings in *England* : And yet after this piece of beggarly pomp attended ten or twelve slaves, guarding him to his country seat. We stopt at a little village for refreshment ; and when we came by the country seat of this great man, we found him sitting under a tree before his door, eating a mess of boiled rice, with a great piece of garlick in it, and a bag filled with green pepper by him, and another plant like ginger, with a bit of lean mutton, all this put together was his worship's repast : But pray observe the sloth and state of the fool ! Two women slaves brought his food ; which being laid before him, two others appeared to perform their respective offices ; one fed him with a spoon, while the other scraped off what fell upon his beard and vest, and gave it to a particular favourite to eat. And thus we left the wretch, pleased with the conceit of our admiring his magnificence, which rather raised our scorn and detestation.

At last we arrived at the great city of *Pekin*, accompanied by two servants, and the old *Portuguese* pilot, whose charges we bore, and who was our interpreter. We had scarce been a week at *Pekin*, but he comes laughing to us, Ah, Signior *Inglish*, said he, me someting tell you make your heart glad, but make me sorry, for you bring me here, 25 days journey, and now you leave me, go back alone ; and which shall I make my port after, widout the ship, widout de horse, widout pecune, so he called money in his broken language. But, in short, that there was a great caravan of *Muscovite* and *Polish* merchants in the city, who were preparing to set out for *Muscovy* by land within six weeks ; and that he was certain we would take this opportunity, and consequently that he must go home by himself. Indeed this news pleased us much : Are you certain of this, said I ? Yes, Sir, said he, me sure true. Then he told me, that having met an old acquaintance, an *Armenian*, who was among them, and came last from *Afracan*, with a design to go to *Tonquin*, where he formerly knew him ; but having altered his resolution, was resolved to go with the caravan to *Moscow*, and so down the river *Wolga* to *Afracan*. Well, Signior, said I, don't be discontented about your returning alone ; for, if by this means I can find a passage to *England*, it will be your own fault if you return to *Macao* at all. And so, consulting with my partner what was best to be done, he referred it to me as I pleased, our affairs being so well settled at *Bengal*, that if we could vend the *China* silks we had purchased, he would consent to go to *England*, and so return to *Bengal* in one of the Company's ships. And thus we resolved, that if our pilot would go with us, we would bear his charges to *Moscow* or *England*, and give him £170 sterling. Hereupon we called him, and told him the cause of his complaint should be removed, if he would accompany us with the caravan, and therefore

therefore desired to know his mind. At this he shook his head, *great long journey*, said he, *me no pecune, carry me Moscow, keep me dere*. But we soon dispelled his concern, by telling him what we would give him here to lay out to the best advantage; and, as for his charges, we would pay them to *Moscow* or to *England*, which he pleased, except the carriage of his goods. At this proposal he was quite transported, saying he would go with us all the world over. We then prepared for our journey: But, I think it was near four months before all the merchants were ready.

In the mean time, my partner and the pilot went express to the port where we first put in, to sell what goods were left there, while I accompanied a *Chinese* merchant to *Nanquin*, and there bought 29 pieces of damask, with about 300 more of other fine silks; and by the time my partner returned to *Pekin*, I had them all carried thither; so that our cargo amounted in goods only to about £4500 sterling, which, together with tea, fine calicoes, nutmegs and cloves, loaded 13 camels for our share, besides what we rode upon, with two or three spare horses, and two more loaded with provision. And indeed the company in general was very great, making about 400 horse, and above 120 men, well armed and provided. We were of several nations, among the rest were five *Scotch* merchants living at *Moscow*, well experienced in business.

We left *Pekin* the beginning of *February*, O. S. and in two days we passed through the gate of the great *China* wall, which was built as a fortification against the *Tartars* 1800 years ago, being 1500 miles long. We then entered a country not near so populous, chiefly under the power of plundering *Tartars*, several companies of whom we perceived, on poor starved horses, contemptible as themselves, without order or discipline. One time our leader, for the day, permitted us to hunt. But what do you think we hunted? only a parcel of sheep, which indeed exceeded any in the world for wildness and swiftness; but while we were pursuing this game, we met above forty *Tartars*, who no sooner perceived us, but one of them blew a horn, at which there immediately appeared above forty or fifty more, at about a mile distant. Hereupon one of the *Scotch* merchants (who knew their cursed ways) ordered us to advance towards them, and attack them immediately. As we advanced, they let fly a volley of arrows, which happily fell a little short of us: This made us halt a little, to return the compliment with bullets. And then it was, led up by the bold *Scot*, that we fired our pistols in their faces, and drew our swords; but there was no occasion, for they flew like timorous sheep, and only three of them remained, beckoning the rest to come up to them. But our brave leader galloped up to them,

shot one dead, knocked another off his horse, while the third ran away : And thus ended our battle with the *Tartars*.

We still travelled a month more through the Emperor of *China's* dominions ; and at length coming to one of their towns (about a day and a half's journey from the city of *Naum*) I wanted to buy a camel : And the person I spoke to would have brought me one, but like a fool I must go along with him, which was about two miles from the village. My old pilot and I walked on foot, forsooth, for some variety ; when coming to the place, where the camels were kept as in a park (guarded by *Chinese* soldiers) we there agreed and bought one, which the *Chinese* man that came with me led along the road. But we had not gone far before we were attacked by five *Tartars*, mounted on horseback ; two of whom seized the man, took the camel from him, and rode away ; but the other three approached us, the first of which suddenly seizing me as I was drawing my sword, the second knocked me down, and stunned me ; but my old trusty *Portuguese*, taking a pistol out of his pocket, which I knew nothing of, and coming up to the fellow that struck me, laid hold of him with one hand, pulling him off his horse, and then shot him dead upon the spot : Then taking his scymetar, he struck at the man that stooped us, but missing him, cut off one of his horse's ears, the pain of which made him throw his rider to the ground, with himself upon him. The poor *Chinese*, who had led the camel, seeing the *Tartar* down, runs to him, and seizing upon his poleaxe, wrenched it from his hands, and knocked out his brains. But there was another *Tartar* to deal with, who seeming neither to fight nor fly, my old man began to charge his pistol ; the very sight of which struck such a terror in the wretch, that he scowered away, leaving my old pilot, rather my champion and defender, an absolute victory.

It was by this time, being awakened from my sleep, as I thought, I began to open my eyes, wondering where I was, quite forgetting all that was past : But when my senses returned, feeling a great pain in my head, while the blood was running over my clothes, I instantly jumped upon my feet, grasping my sword in my hand, with a resolution to take revenge ; yet no enemies appeared, except the dead *Tartar*, with his horse standing by him ; but the old man seeing me recovered, whom he thought slain, ran towards me, and embraced me with the greatest tenderness, at the same time examining into my wound ; but being far from every body, we returned to the village, when the man demanded payment for his camel, which I refusing, we brought the cause before a *Chinese* judge, who acted with great impartiality. Having heard both sides, he asked the *Chinese* man that went with me, whose servant he was ? Sir, said he, I am nobody's, but went with the stranger,

at

at his request: Why then, said the judge, you were the stranger's servant for the time, and the camel being delivered to his servant is the same as being delivered to himself, and accordingly he must pay for it. Indeed the case was so fairly stated, that I had nothing to object to it, so, having paid for what I was robbed of, I sent for another, but did not go myself to fetch it, for I had enough of that sport before.

The city of *Naum* is a frontier of the *Chinese* empire, so fortified, as some tell you, that millions of *Tartars* cannot batter down the walls; by which certainly one might think one of our cannons would do more execution than all their legions.

But the Governour of that city, as we were within a day's march of it, having sent messengers to every part of the road, to inform the travellers and caravans to halt till he had sent a guard to protect them from the numerous bodies of *Tartars* that lately appeared about this city; this news put us into great consternation, but, obeying the orders, within two days there came 200 soldiers from a *Chinese* garrison, and 300 more from *Naum*: Thus, being guarded both in the front and rear, with our own men on the sides, we advanced boldly, thinking we were able to combat 10,000 *Mogul Tartars*, if they had appeared, but were forced to tell another story next day.

For early next morning, marching from a little well situated town called *Changu*, after having passed a river, and entered upon a desert of above fifteen or sixteen miles over; we soon beheld, by a cloud of dust that was raised, that the enemy was approaching towards us. This sight much dispirited the *Chinese*, which appeared so plainly, that my old pilot took notice of it, and called out, Signior *Inglese*, these fellows must be encouraged, or they will ruin us all; and I'm afraid, if the *Tartars* attack us, they will all run away. Why, Signior, said I, what shall be done in this case? Done, says he, why let fifty of our men advance, and then flanking on each wing, encourage them, for I know they will fight well enough in company. Accordingly we took his advice, marching fifty to the right wing, and the same number to the left, and the rest made a line of reserve, leaving the last 200 men to guard the camels, or to assist us as occasion required.

Thus prepared, a party of them came forward, viewing our posture, and traversing the ground on the front of our line; Hereupon we ordered the two wings to fire, and each of them to give a salvo with their shot, which accordingly was done. And this indeed put a stop to their proceeding; for soon after wheeling off to their left, and undoubtedly giving an account to their companions what reception they might expect, they gave over their enterprise.

When we came to the city of *Naum*, we returned the Governour hearty thanks, and gave 100 crowns among the soldiers that

that guarded us. We rested there but one day, and then proceeded on our travels, passing several great rivers and deserts, till, on the 13th of *April*, we came to the frontiers of *Muscovy*, the first town of which was called *Argun*.

This happy event, as I thought it, of coming into a Christian country, made me congratulate the *Scotch* merchant upon it: He smiled at that, telling me, not to rejoice too soon; for, said he, except the *Russian* soldiers in garrison, and a few inhabitants of the cities upon the road, all the rest of this country for above a thousand miles, is inhabited by the most ignorant and barbarous Pagans.

We advanced from the river *Argun* by moderate journeys; and found convenient garrisons in the land filled with Christian soldiers, for the security of commerce, and for the convenient lodging of travellers; but the inhabitants of the country were mere Pagans, worshipping the sun, moon, and stars. And this idolatry we met near *Argun*, at a city of the *Tartars* and *Russians* joined together, called *Nerisfinkey*: For being curious to see their way of living, while the caravan continued to rest themselves in that city, I went to one of their villages, when there was to be one of their solemn sacrifices. There behold upon the stump of an old tree, was placed an idol of wood, more ugly than the representation of the devil himself; its head was such as resembled no living creature; its ears were as big and high as goats' horns, a crooked nose, four-cornered mouth, and horrible teeth: It was clothed in sheeps' skins, had a great *Tartar* bonnet, with two horns growing through it, and was eight feet high; without feet, legs, or proportion. Before this idol, there lay 16 or 17 people, who brought their offerings, and were making their prayers; while at a distance stood three men and one bullock, as victims to their ugly monster.

Such stupendous sacrilege as this, in robbing the true God of his honour, filled me with the greatest astonishment and reflexion; which soon turning to rage and fury, I rode up to the image, and cut in pieces the bonnet that was upon his head with my sword, so that it hung down by one of the horns; while one of my men that was with me, pulled at it by its sheep-skin garment: But immediately an hideous howling and outcry ran through the village, and two or three hundred people coming about our ears, we were obliged to fly for it.

But I had not done with the monster; for the caravan being to rest three nights in the town, I told the *Scotch* merchant what I had seen, and I was resolved to take four or five men well armed with me, in order to destroy the idol, and shew the people how little reason they had to trust to it, who could not save itself. At first he laughed at me, representing the danger of it; and when it was destroyed, what time had we to preach



to them better things, whose zeal and ignorance were in the highest degree, and both unparalleled; that if I should be taken by them, I should be served like a poor *Russian*, who contemned their worship; that is, be stripped naked, and tied to the top of the idol, there shot at with arrows till my body was full of them, and then burnt as a sacrifice to the monster: But, Sir, said he, since your zeal carries you so far, rather than you should be alone, I will accompany you, and bring a stout fellow, equal to yourself, if he will assist us in this design: And accordingly he brought one called Captain *Richardson*, who hearing the story, readily consented; but my partner declined it, being altogether out of his way: And so we three, and my man servant, resolved to execute this exploit, about midnight; but upon second thoughts we deferred it to the next night, by reason the caravan being to go from thence next morning, we should be out of the Governour's power. Well, I procured a *Tartar's* sheep-skin robe, a bonnet, with bows and arrows, and every one of us got the like habits. The first night we spent in mixing combustible matter with aqua-vitæ, gunpowder, &c. having a good quantity of tar in a little pot. And the last night coming to the idol about eleven o'clock, the moon being up, we found none guarding; but we perceived a light in the house, where we saw the priests before. One man was for firing the hut, another for killing the people, and a third for making them prisoners, while the idol was destroyed. And, in short, to the latter we agreed; so that knocking at the door, we seized the first that opened it, then stopping his mouth, and tying his feet together, left him with the idol. In this manner did we serve two others, but the valiant *Scotch* merchant being discovered at length, rushed in upon them, being backed by us, and set fire to the composition, which frightened them so much, that we brought them all away, as prisoners to their wooden god. Then we fell to work with him, daubing him all over with tar, mixed with tallow and brimstone, stopping his eyes, ears and mouth full of gunpowder, with a great piece of wildfire in his bonnet, and environed it with dry forage. All this being done, we unloosened and ungagged the prisoners, and set the idol on fire, which the gunpowder blowing up, the shape of it was deformed, rent and split, which the forage utterly consumed; for we stayed to see its destruction, lest the ignorant idolatrous people should have thrown themselves into the flame. And thus we came away undiscovered, appearing so busy in the morning among our fellow-travellers, that nobody could have suspected, but that we had been in our beds all night.

But after we were set out, and had got some small distance from the city, there came a great multitude of the country people to the gates, demanding satisfaction of the *Russian* Governour,

ernour, for insulting their priests, and burning their great *Cham Chi Tbaungu*, who dwelt in the Sun, and that no mortal would violate his image, but some Christian miscreants: And therefore, being already 30,000 strong, they denounced war against him and all his Christians.

The Governour assured them he was ignorant of the matter, and that none of his garrison had been out; that indeed there was a caravan that went away that morning, that he would send after them to inquire into it, and whoever were the offenders, should be delivered into their hands. This satisfied them for the present; but the Governour sent to inform us, that if any of us had done it, we should make our escape; or if not, make all the haste away possible, while he kept them in play as long as he could. Hereupon we marched two days and two nights, stopping but very little, till at last we rested at a village called *Plotbus*, and halted to *Jarawena*, another of the Czar's colonies. But on the second day's march from the former, having entered the desert, and passed the lake *Sbaks-Ofer*, we beheld a numerous body of horse on the other side of it to the north, who supposed we had passed that side of the lake: And in three days after, having found their mistake, or being informed which way we went, they came upon us toward the dusk of the evening, just as we had pitched our camp between two little but very thick woods, with a little river running before our front, and we cut down some trees to place in our rear, but before we had finished our situation, the enemy were at hand. But not falling on us immediately, they sent three messengers, who demanded the men who had insulted their priests, and burnt their god *Cham Chi Tbaungu*, that they might be burnt, and then they would peaceably depart; but if not, they would destroy them all. Hereupon our men stared at one another, but nobody was the word, as indeed nobody knew it but those who did it. Upon which the leader of the caravan answered, that they were peaceable merchants, who meddled with none of their priests or gods; and therefore desired them not to disturb us, and put us to the necessity of defending ourselves. But so far was this from satisfying them, that the next morning, coming to our right, they let fly a volley of arrows at us, but hurt not any, because we sheltered ourselves under the baggage: But as we expected to come to an engagement, a cunning father, a *Cossack*, obtaining leave of the leader to go to these people, mounts his horse, and rides directly from our rear; when taking a circuit, he comes back as though he had been sent express; tells them a formal story, that the villains who burnt the *Cham Chi Tbaungu*, were gone to *Sibielska*, with a resolution to burn the god *Sbal-Isar*, belonging to the *Tongueses*. Upon which, believing this cunning *Tartar*, who was servant to our *Muscovites*, away they drove

drove to *Sibielska*, and in less than three hours were out of sight, nor did we ever hear of them more.

When we came to the city of *Jarawena*, we rested there five days, and then entered into a frightful desert, which held us twenty three days march, infested with several small companies of robbers or *Mogul Tartars*, who never had the courage to attack us. But after we had passed over this place, we found several *Tartars*: In particular the governour of *Adinskoy* offered us a guard of fifty men, to the next station; if we apprehended any danger. All this way the natives retained the same Paganism and barbarity, only not so dangerous, being conquered by the *Muscovites*. The clothing, both of men and women, are the skins of beasts, living under ground in vaults and caves, which run into one another. They have idols in almost every family; besides, they adore the sun and stars, water and snow; and the least uncommon thing that happens in the elements, alarms them as much as thunder and lightning does the unbelieving *Jews*.

Through all the country nothing more remarkable occurred: When we had got through this great desert I before mentioned, after two days farther travel, we came to *Janeza*, a *Muscovite* city, on the great river so called, which we are told, parts *Europe* from *Asia*. Neither here are the Pagans much better, though intermixed with the *Muscovites*; but the wonder will cease, when I inform my reader of what was observed to me, that the Czar converts the *Tartars* with soldiers, not clergymen, and is more assiduous to make them faithful subjects than good Christians.

From this city to the river *Oby*, we travelled over a pleasant, fruitful, but very uncultivated country, for want of good management and people, and those few are mostly Pagans. This is the place where the *Muscovite* criminals are banished to, if they are not put to death. The next city we came to, was the capital city of *Siberia*, called *Tobolski*, when having been almost seven months on our journey, and winter drawing on apace, my partner and I consulted about our particular affairs, in what manner we should dispose of ourselves. We had been told of sledges and rein deer, to carry us over the snow in the winter season, the snow being frozen very hard, making an entire covering to the ground, so that the sledges can run upon the surface without any regard to what is beneath. But I, being bound to *England*, must either go with the caravan to *Jereslaw*, thence west to *Narva*, and the gulf of *Finland*, and so by land or sea to *Denmark*; or else I must leave the caravan at a little town on the *Dwina*, and so go to *Archangel*, where I was sure of shipping either to *England*, *Holland* or *Hamburg*. One night I fell in company with an illustrious, but banished prince, whose company and virtues were such as made me propose  
a method

a method to him to obtain his liberty. My dear friend, said he, as I am freed from my miserable greatness, with all its attendants of pride, ambition, avarice and luxury; if I should escape from this place, those pernicious seeds may revive again, to my lasting disquietude: Therefore let me stay in a blessed confinement. For I am but flesh, a mere man, with passions and affections as such: O be not my friend and tempter too! Struck dumb with surprise, I stood silent a while; nor was he in less disorder, by which perceiving he wanted to give vent to his mind, I desired him to consider of it, and so withdrew. But about two hours after he came to my apartment, Dear friend, said he, though I cannot consent to accompany you, I shall have this satisfaction in parting, that you leave me an honest man still; but as a testimony of my affection to you, be pleased to accept this present of fables.

I sent my servant the next morning to his Lordship, with a small present of tea, two pieces of *China* damask, and four little wedges of gold: But he only accepted the tea, one piece of damask, and a wedge of gold, for the curiosity of the *Japan* stamp upon it. Not long after he sent for me, and told me, that what he had refused himself, he hoped, upon his account, I would grant to another whom he should name: In short, it was his only son, who was above 200 miles distant from him on the other side of the *Oby*, whom he could send for, if I gave my consent. This I soon complied with, upon which he sent his servants the next day for his son, who returned in twenty days time, bringing seven horses loaded with valuable furs. At night the young Lord was conducted incognito to our apartment, where his father presented him to me. We then consulted the best way for travelling, and, after buying a considerable quantity of fables, black fox skins, fine ermines, &c. (which I sold at *Archangel* at a good price) we set out from this city the beginning of *June*, making a small caravan, being about 32 horses and camels, of which I represented the head. My young Lord had with him a very faithful *Siberian* servant, well acquainted with the roads: We shunned the principal towns and cities, as *Tumen*, *Sal-Kamaskoy*, and several others, by reason of their strictness in examining travellers, lest any of the banished persons of distinction should escape. Having passed the river *Kama*, we came to a city on the *European* side called *Soloy Kamaskoy*, where we found the people mostly *Pagans* as before. We then passed a desert about 200 miles over, but in other places it is near 700: In passing this wild place, we were beset by a troop of men on horseback, about forty-five, armed with bows and arrows. At first they looked earnestly on us, and then placed themselves in our way. We were about sixteen men, and drew up in a little line before our camels. My young Lord sent out his servant to know who they

they were ; but when he approached them, he neither knew a word they said, nor would they admit him to come near them at his peril, but prepared to shoot him. At his return he told us, he believed them to be *Calmuck Tartars*, and that he thought there were more of them upon the desert. This was but a small comfort for us, yet seeing a little grove at about a quarter of a mile distance, we moved to it by the old *Portuguese* pilot's advice, without meeting any opposition. In this place we found a springy piece of ground, a great spring running from a little brook on one side, joined with another like it a little farther, which in short was the head of the river *Wriska*. We went to work, immediately cutting down great arms of trees, and laid them hanging (not quite cut off) from one tree to another. And thus we waited the motions of the enemy, without perceiving any advance they made towards us : But about two hours before night, being joined by some others, they made about 80 horse, among whom we fancied were some women, and coming to us with great fury, we fired without ball, calling to them in the *Russian* tongue to know their business ; but they not understanding us, or pretending so, came directly to the wood side, not considering that we were so fortified, that they could not break in. Our old pilot proved both our captain and engineer, and desired us not to fire till they came within pistol shot, and he gave the word of command ; then to take the surest aim : But he did not bid us fire, till they were within two pikes of us ; and then we killed 15 of them, wounded several, as also their horses, having every one charged with two or three balls at least. So much were they surprized at our undauntedness, that they fell back about one hundred rods from us. In the mean time we loaded again, and all falling out, secured four or five of their horses, whose riders we found were killed, and perceived them to be *Tartars*. About an hour after they made another attempt to break in, but finding us ready to receive them, they retired.

All that night we worked hard in strengthening our situation, and barricadoing the entrances into the woods ; but when day light came, we made a very unwelcome discovery ; for the enemy being encouraged by their assistance, had set up eleven or twelve tents, in the form of a camp, about three quarters of a mile from us. I must confess, I was never more concerned in my life, giving myself, and all that I had, over for lost : As for my partner, as the loss of his goods would be his ruin, before they should be taken from him, he would fight to the last drop of his blood. But to escape their numbers, I had recourse to a stratagem, by kindling a large fire to burn all night ; and no sooner was it dark, but we pursued our journey towards the pole, or the north star, and so travelling all night, by six o'clock in the morning we came to a *Ru-*

*han* village, called *Kermanzinjky*, where we pass'd a little river called *Kerzia*, and from thence came to a large town named *Ozouys*, where we heard that several troops of *Calmuck Tartars* had been abroad upon the desert, but that we were past all danger. Within five days after, we came to *Vcuslima*, upon the river *Witzedga*: From thence we came to *Lazorenjky*, on the 3d of *July*, where providing ourselves with two lugg'age boats and a convenient bark, we embarked the 7th, and arrived at *Archangel* the 18th, after a year, five months, and three days journey, including the eight months and odd days we spent at *Tobolski*. We came from *Archangel* the 20th of *August* in the same year, and arrived at the *Elbe* the 30th of *September*. And here indeed my partner and I made a very good sale of our goods, both those of *China* and *Siberia*, when dividing our effects, my share came to £3475. 17s. 3d. after all the losses we had sustained, and charges we had been at. At *Hamburgh* my young Lord parted from me, in order to go to the court of *Vienna*, not only to seek protection, but to correspond with his father's friends: And, after we had staid four months at *Hamburgh*, I came from thence over land to the *Hague*, where embarking in the packet, I arrived in *London* the 10th of *January*, 1705, after ten years and nine months absence from *England*.

ROBINSON

---

# ROBINSON CRUSOE'S VISION

O F T H E

## ANGELIC WORLD.

---

### CHAPTER I.

#### *Of Solitude.*

**H**OWEVER solitude is looked upon as a restraint to the pleasures of the world, in company and conversation; yet it is a happy state of exemption from a sea of trouble, an inundation of vanity, vexation and disappointment. While we enjoy ourselves, neither the joy nor sorrow of other men affect us: We are then at liberty, with the voice of our soul, to speak to God. By this we shun such frequent trivial discourse, as ever becomes an obstruction to virtue: And how often do we find we had reason to wish we had not been in company, or said nothing when we were there: For either we offend God by the impiety of our discourse, or lay ourselves open to the violence of designing people by unguarded expressions: And consequently perceive the coldness and treachery of pretended friends, when once involved in trouble and affliction: And such unfaithful intimates (I should say enemies) who rather by false innuendoes would accumulate miseries upon us, than honestly assist us when suffering under the most artful and designing men. But in a state of solitude, when our tongues cannot be heard except by the Great Majesty of Heaven, how happy are we, in the blessed enjoyment of converse with our Maker! 'Tis then we make him our friend, which makes us above the envy and contempt of wicked men. And when a man converses with himself, he is sure that he does not converse with an enemy: At least, we should retreat to good company, and good books: I mean not by solitude that a man should retire into a cell, a desert, or a monastery, which would be altogether an useless and unprofitable restraint: For as men are formed for society, and have an absolute necessity and dependence one upon another; so there is a retirement of the soul, in which it converses with heaven, even in the midst of men: And indeed no man is  
more

more fit to speak freely, than he, who can without any violence to himself, refrain his tongue, or keep silent altogether. As to religion, it is by this the soul gets acquainted with the hidden mysteries of the holy writings: Here she finds those floods of tears, in which good men wash themselves day and night; and only make a visit to God, and his holy angels. In this conversation, the truest peace and most solid joy are to be found; it is a continual feast of contentment on earth, and the means of attaining everlasting happiness in heaven.

## C H A P. II.

### *Of Honesty.*

**H**ONESTY is a virtue beloved by good men, and pretended to by all persons: In this there are several degrees: To pay every man his own, is the *common law* of honesty; but to do good to all mankind, is the *Chancery law* of honesty; and this chancery court is in every man's breast, where his *Conscience* is *Lord Chancellor*. Hence it is that a miser, though he pays every one their own, cannot be an honest man, when he does not discharge the good offices that are incumbent on a friendly, kind, generous person: For the prophet *Isaiab* saith, ch. xxxvii. 7, 8. *The instruments of a churl are evil: He deviseth wicked devices to destroy the poor with lying words, even when the needy speaketh right. But the liberal deviseth liberal things, and by liberal things shall he stand.* 'Tis certainly honesty, to do every thing the law requires: but should we throw every poor debtor in prison till he has paid the utmost farthing, hang every malefactor without mercy, exact the penalty of every bond, and the forfeiture of every indenture: why this would be downright cruelty, and not honesty; and is contrary to that general rule, *to do to another, as that which you would have done unto you*. Sometimes necessity makes an honest man a knave, when a rich man is an honest man, but no thanks to him for it. The trial of honesty is this: Did you ever want bread, and had your neighbour's loaf in keeping, and would starve, rather than eat it? Were you ever arrested, having in your custody another man's cash, and would rather go to gaol than break it? If so, then indeed this may be reckoned honesty. For King *Solomon* tells us, *that a good name is better than life, and is a precious ointment, and which when a man has once lost he has nothing left worth keeping.*



## C H A P. III.

*Of Suffering Afflictions.*

**A**FFLICTIONS are very common to all mankind, and whether they proceed from losses and disappointments, or the malice of men, they often bring their advantages along with them: For this shews men the vanity and deceitfulness of this life, and is an occasion of rectifying our measures, and bringing us to a more modest opinion of ourselves: It tells us how necessary the assistance of Divine Grace is to us, when life itself becomes a burthen, and death even desirable. But when the greatest oppression comes upon us, we must have recourse to Patience, begging of God to give us that virtue. And the more composed we are in any trouble, the more commendable is our wisdom; and the larger will be our recompence. And let the provocation be what it will, whether from a good natured and conscientious, or a wicked, perverse, and vexatious man, all this we should take as from the over ruling hand of God, as a punishment for our sins. Many times injured innocence may be abused by false oaths, or the power of wicked, jealous, or malicious men; but we often find it, like the palm, rise the higher, the more it is depressed, while the justice of God is eminently remarkable in punishing those, one way or other, who desire or endeavour to procure the downfall of an innocent man: Nor does God fail comforting an afflicted person, who with tears and prayers solicits the throne of heaven for deliverance and protection. *David says, That his soul was full of trouble, and his life drew near unto the grave.* But certainly *David's* afflictions made him eminently remarkable, particularly when pursued by King *Saul*, and hunted as a partridge over the mountains. But one thing which stands by innocence, is the love of God: For were we to suffer disgrace, nay, an ignominious death itself, what consolation does innocence procure at our latest conflict, our last moments?

## C H A P. IV.

*Of Immorality of Conversation, and the vulgar Errors of Behaviour.*

**A**S conversation is a great part of human happiness, so it is a pleasant sight to behold a sweet tempered man, who is always fit for it; to see an air of humour and pleasantness sit upon every brow, and even something angelic upon every countenance: Whereas if we observe a designing man, we shall find a mark of involuntary sadness breaks in on his joy,

T  
and

and a certain insurrection in the soul against the tyranny of profligate principles.

They err very much, who think religion, or a strict morality discomposes the mind, and renders it unfit for conversation ; for it is rather that which inspires us to innocent mirth, indeed, without a counterfeit joy, as vicious men appear with : And indeed wit is as consistent with religion, as religion is with good manners ; nor is there any thing in the limitation of virtue and religion, that should abate the pleasure of it, but on the contrary increase it.

But on the other hand, many men by their own vice and intemperance, disqualify themselves for conversation, in being of cynical, surly and rude tempers, though they boast themselves otherwise. Conversation is immoral, where discourse is indecent, immodest, scandalous, slanderous or abusive. How great is their folly, and how much it is exposed, by affronting their best friend, even God himself, before men, whose notions are uncertain, and yet who laugh at the fool *when his fear cometh !*

The great scandal atheistical and immoral discourse gives to virtue, ought, methinks, to be punished by the judges : Make a man once cease to believe a God, and he has nothing left to limit his soul but mere philosophy. And how incongruous is this to government, that a man should be punished for drunkenness or swearing, and yet have liberty to affront and even deny the Majesty of Heaven ? If a man gives the lie to a gentleman in company, or perhaps speaks a word without any offensive meaning, he flies into a passion, quarrels, fights, and perhaps murders him ; or afterwards prosecutes him at law with the utmost villany and oppression.

The next thing to be restrained from is obscene discourse, which is the language only of the proficients in debauchery, who never repent but in a gaol or an hospital ; and whose carcases stink as bad as their discourse, till the body becomes too nasty for the soul to stay any longer in it.

Nor is false talking less to be avoided : For lying is the sheep's clothing hung upon the wolf's back ; 'tis the *Pharisee's* prayer, the whore's blush, the hypocrite's paint, the murderer's smile, the thief's cloak, 'tis *Joab's* embrace, and *Judas's* kiss ; in a word, 'tis mankind's darling sin, and the devil's distinguishing character. Some add lies to lies, till it not only comes to be improbable, but even impossible too : Others lie for gain, to deceive, delude, and betray : And a third sort lie for sport, or for *fun*. There are other liars, who are personal and malicious ; who foment differences, and carry tales from one house to another, in order to gratify their own envious tempers, without any regard or reverence for truth.

## C H A P. V.

*Of the present State of Religion in the World.*

**I** DOUBT, indeed, there is much more devotion than religion in the world, more adoration than supplication, and more hypocrisy than sincerity: And it is very melancholy to consider, what numbers of people there are, furnished with the powers of reason and the gifts of nature, and yet abandoned to the grossest ignorance and depravity. But it would be uncharitable for us to imagine, (as some Papists abounding with too much ill-nature, the only scandal to religion, do) that they will certainly be in the state of damnation after this life: for how can we think it consistent with the mercy and goodness of an infinite being, to damn those creatures, when he has not furnished them with the light of his gospel? Or how can such proud, conceited, and cruel bigots prescribe rules to the justice and mercy of God?

We are told by some people, that the great image which King *Nebuchadnezzar* set up to be adored by his people, held the representation of the sun in his right hand, as the principal object of adoration. But to wave this discourse of Heathens, how many self-contradicting principles are held among Christians? And how do we doom one another to the devil, while all profess to worship the same Deity, and to expect the same salvation?

When I was at *Portugal* there was held at that time the court of justice of the inquisition. All the criminals were carried in procession to the great church; where eight of them were habited in gowns and caps of canyas, whereon the torments of hell were displayed, and they were condemned and burnt for crimes against the Catholic faith and Blessed Virgin.

I am sorry to make any reflexions upon Christians; but indeed in *Italy* the *Romish* religion seems the most cruel and mercenary upon earth: And a very judicious person, who travelled through *Italy* from *Turkey*, tells us, "That there is only the face, and outward pomp of religion there; that the church protects murderers and assassins, and then delivers the civil magistrates over to Satan for doing justice; interdicts whole kingdoms, and shuts up the churches for want of paying a few ecclesiastic dues, and so puts a stop to religion for want of their money: That the Court of Inquisition burnt two men for speaking dithonourably of the Blessed Virgin, and the missionaries of *China* tolerated the worshipping the devil by their new converts: That *Italy*, was the theatre, where religion was the grand opera; and that the Popish clergy were no other than the stage players."

As to religion in *Poland*, they deny Christ to be the Messiah, or that the Messiah was come in the flesh. And as to their Protestants, they are the followers of *Lelius Socinus*, who denied

nied our Saviour's divinity ; and have no concern about the divine inspiration of the Holy Ghost.

In *Muscovy* their churches are built of wood, and indeed they have but wooden priests, though of the *Greek* church : They pray as much to *St. Nicholas*, as Papists do to the *Virgin Mary*, for protection in all their difficulties or afflictions.

As to *Lutherans*, they only differ from the *Romans* in believing Consubstantiation, instead of Transubstantiation ; but, like them, they are much pleased with the external gallantry and pomp, more than the true and real practice of religion.

In *France* I found a world of priests, the streets every where crowded with them, and the churches full of women ; but surely never was a nation so full of blind guides, so ignorant of religion, and even as void of morals, as those people who confess their sins to them.

Now it seems strange, that while all men own the Divine Being, there should be so many different sentiments about paying him obedience in the Christian church : I know not what reason to assign for this, except it be their different capacities and faculties.

And indeed upon this account, we have perceived in all Christian countries what mortal feuds have been about religion : what wars and bloodshed have molested *Europe*, till the general pacification of the *German* troubles at the treaty of *Westphalia* ; and since, between the *Lutheran* churches ? And should I take a prospect at home, what unhappy divisions are between Christians in this kingdom about Episcopacy, Presbytery, the Church of *England* men and the Dissenters ; and where they withstand one another like *St. Paul* and *St. Peter*, even to the face ; as much as to say, carry on the dispute to the utmost extremity.

It might be a question, why there are such differences in religious points, and why these breaches should be so hot and irreconcilable ? All the answer I can give to this, is, that we inquire more concerning the truth of religion, than any other nation in the world ; and the anxious concern we have about it, makes us jealous of every opinion ; and tenacious of our own : And this is not because we are more furious and rash than other people ; but the truth is, we are more concerned about them, and being sensible that the scripture is the great rule of faith, the standard for life and doctrine, we have recourse to it ourselves, without submitting to the pretended infallible judge upon earth.

There is another question pertinent to the former, what remedy can we apply to this malady ? And to this I must negatively answer, not to have us be less religious, that we might differ less about it : And this is striking at the very root of all religious differences ; for certainly, were they to be carried

carried on with a peaceable spirit, willing to be informed, our variety of opinions would not have the name of differences; nor should we separate in communion of charity, though we did not agree in several articles of religion.

Nor is there a less useful question to start, namely, where will our unhappy religious differences end? To which I hope I may answer, *In Heaven*: There all unchristian and unbrotherly differences will find a period; there we shall embrace many a sinner that here we think it a dishonour to converse with; and perceive many a heart we have broken here with censures, reproaches and revilings, made whole again by the balm of the Redeemer's blood. Here we shall perceive there have been other flocks than those of our fold; that those we have excommunicated have been taken into that superiour communion; and, in a word, that those contradicting notions and principles, which we thought inconsistent with true religion, we shall find reconcileable to themselves, to one another, and to the fountain of truth. If any man ask me, why our differences cannot be ended on earth? I answer, were we all thoroughly convinced, that then they would be reconciled, we would put an end to them before; but this is impossible to be done: for as men's certain convictions of truth are not equal to one another, or to the weight and significancy of such veracity; so neither can a general effect of this affair be expected on this side of time, this side of the grave.

Before I conclude this chapter, I shall beg leave to discourse a little of the wonderful excellency of negative religion and negative virtue. The latter sets out like the *Pharisee with God, I thank thee*; 'tis a piece of religious pageantry, the hypocrite's hope; and in a word, 'tis a positive vice: For it is either a *mask* to deceive others, or a *mist* to deceive ourselves. A man thus clothed with negatives, thus argues: I am not such a drunkard as my landlord, such a thief as my tenant, such a swearer as my neighbour; neither am I a cheat, an atheist, a raking fellow, or a highwayman: Not I live a sober, regular, retired life: I am a good man, I go to church, *God I thank thee*. Now though a man boasts of his virtue in contradiction to the vices mentioned, yet a person had better be them all together than *the man himself*, for he is so full of himself, so persuaded that he is good and religious enough already, that he has no thoughts of any thing, except it be to pull off his hat to God Almighty now and then, and thank him, that he has no occasion for him; and has the vanity to think that his neighbours must imagine well of him too.

Now the negative man, though he is no drunkard, yet is intoxicated with the pride of his own worth: A good neighbour and peacemaker in other families, but a tyrant in his own: appears in church for a shew, but never falls upon his knees in

his closet ; does all his alms before men to be seen by them ; eager in the duties of the second table, but regardless of the first ; appears religious to be taken notice of by men, but without intercourse or communication between God and his own soul. Pray what is this man ? Or what comfort is there of the life he lives ? He is sensible of faith, repentance, and a christian mortified life : In a word, he is perfectly a stranger to the essential part of religion.

Let us, for a while, enter into the private and retired part of his conversation : What notions has he of his mispent hours, and the natural reflux of all our minutes on to the great centre and gulph of life, *Eternity* ? Does he know how to put a right value on time, or esteem *the life blood of his soul*, as it really is, and act in all the moments of it, as one that must account for them ? If then you cannot form an equality between what he can do, and what he shall receive ; less can it be founded upon his negative virtue, or what he forbore to do ; and if neither his negative or positive piety can be equal to the reward, and to the eternity that reward is to last for, what then is to become of the *Pharisee*, when he is to be judged by the sincerity of his repentance, and rewarded, according to the infinite grace of God, with a state of blessedness to an endless eternity ?

When the negative man converses with the invisible world, he is filled with as much horreur and dread, as *Fælix* when St. *Paul* reasoned to him of temperance, righteousness, and of judgment to come : For *Fælix*, though a great philosopher of great power and reverence, was a negative man ; and he was made sensible, by the apostle, that as a life of virtue and temperance was its own reward, by giving a healthy body, a clear head, and a composed life ; so eternal happiness must proceed from another spring ; namely, the infinite unbounded grace of a provoked God, who having erected a righteous tribunal, Jesus Christ would separate such as by faith and repentance he had brought home and united to himself by the grace of adoption ; and on the foot of his having laid down his life as a ransom for them, had appointed them to salvation, when all the philosophy, temperance, and righteousness in the world besides, was ineffectual ; and this, I say, it was, that made *Fælix*, this negative man, tremble.

## CHAP. VI.

### *Of Listening to the Voice of Providence.*

**T**HE magnificent and wise King *Solomon* bids us *cry after knowledge, and lift up our voice for understanding* ; which is explained to us as a *religious knowledge* by the following words :

words: *Then shalt thou understand the fear of the Lord, and find the knowledge of God.* By which undoubtedly he meant to inquire after every thing he has permitted us to know, and not to search into those ways that are unsearchable, and are effectually locked up from our knowledge. Now, *as listening to the voice of Providence* is my present subject, I am very willing in the first place, to suppose that I am writing to those who own,

1. That there is a God, a first great moving cause of all things, an eternal power, prior, and consequently superior, to all power and being.
2. That this eternal power, which is God, is the sovereign creator and governour of heaven and earth.

To avoid all needless distinctions what persons in the God-head exercise the creating, and what the governing power, I offer that glorious text, Psalm xxxiii. 6. Where the whole Trinity is entitled to the whole creating work; and therefore in the next place, I shall lay down these two propositions:

I. *That the Eternal God guides by his Providence the whole universe, which was created by his power.*

II. *That this Providence manifests a particular care over, and concern in the governing and directing man, the most noble creature upon earth.*

Now it is plain, that natural religion proves the first, by intimating the necessity of a Providence guiding and governing the world, from the consequence of the wisdom, justice, prescience, and goodness of the Almighty Creator: For otherwise it would be absurd to think that God should create a world, without any care or providence over it, in guiding the operations of nature, so as to preserve the order of his creation.

Revealed religion gives us light into the care and concern of his Providence, by the climates being made habitable, the creatures subjected and made nourishing, and all vegetative life made medicinal; and all this for the sake of man, who is made viceroy to the king of the earth. The short description I shall give of Providence is this, that it is that operation of the power, of the wisdom, justice and goodness of God, by which he influences, governs and directs, not only the means, but the events of all things, which concern us in this sublunary world; the sovereignty of which we ought always to reverence, obey its motions, observe its dictates; and *listen to its voice.* *The prudent man foreseeth evil and hideth himself;* that is, as I take it, there is a secret Providence intimates to us, that some danger threatens, if we strive not to shun it.

The same day of the month that Sir *John Hotbam* kept out *Hull* against the royal martyr King *Charles I.* the same day Sir *John Hotbam* was put to death by the Parliament for that very action: The same day that the King himself signed the warrant for the execution of the Earl of *Strafford*, the same day of  
the

the month was he barbarously murdered by the blood thirsty *Oliverian* crew : And the same day that King *James II.* came to the crown against the bill of exclusion, the same day he was voted abdicated by the parliament, and the throne filled with King *William* and Queen *Mary*.

The voice of signal deliverances from sudden dangers, is not only a just call to repentance, but a caution against falling into the like danger : But such, who are utterly careless of themselves after, shew a lethargy of the worst nature, which seems to me to be a kind of practical atheism, or at least a living in a contempt of heaven, when he receives good at the hand of his Maker, but is unconcerned at the nature and original of it ; neither when he receives evil does it bring him to any state of humiliation.

We have a remarkable story of two soldiers being condemned to death in *Flanders*, the general being prevailed upon to spare one of them, ordered them to cast dice upon the drum-head for their lives : The first throwing two sixes, wrung his hands, but was surprized when the other threw two sixes also. The officer appointed to see the execution ordered them to throw again ; they did so, and each of them threw two fives ; at which the soldiers that stood round shouted, and said neither of them was to die. Hereupon the officer acquainted the council of war, who ordered them to throw again, and then came up two fours : The general being made acquainted with it, sends for the men, and pardoned them : *I love*, says he, *in such extraordinary cases, to listen to the voice of Providence.*

We read in the holy writings, how God speaks to men, by appearance of angels, or by dreams and visions of the night. As God appeared to *Abraham*, *Lot*, and *Jacob* ; so angels have appeared to many in other cases, as *Manoah* and his wife, *Zacchariah*, the Virgin *Mary*, and to the apostles ; others have been warned in a dream, as King *Abimilech*, the false prophet *Balaam*, and many others.

It is certainly a very great and noble inquiry, what we shall be after this life, being assured that there is a place reserved for the reception of our souls after death : For if we are to be, we must have a *where*, which the scriptures assert by the examples of *Dives* and *Lazarus*. The doctrine of spirits was long believed before our Saviour's time ; for even the disciples of the blessed Jesus perceiving our Saviour walking on the sea, they were much surprized, as though they had seen a spirit. Nay, in those ages of the world, it was believed that spirits intermeddled in the affairs of mankind : And throughout the Old Testament I do not find any institution, that in the least contradicts it. All the pains and labour that some learned men have taken to confute the story of the witch of *Endor*, and the appearance of an old man personating *Samuel*, cannot  
make



make such apparitions inconsistent with nature or religion : And it is plain, that, was it either a good or bad spirit, it prophetically told the unfortunate king what should happen the next day : For, said the spirit, *The Lord will deliver thee into the hand of the Philistines ; and to-morrow shalt thou, and thy sons, be with me.*

Abundance of strange notions possessed me when I was in the desolate island ; especially of a moonshiny night, when every bush seemed a man, and every tree a man on horseback. When I crept into the dismal cave, where the old goat lay expiring, whose articulate groans even resembled those of a man, how was I surprized on this occasion, when my blood chilled in my veins, a cold sweaty dew sat on my forehead, my hair stood upright, and my joints, like *Belshazzar's knees*, shook against one another. And indeed, though I afterwards found what it was, the remains of this surprize did not wear off me for a great while ; and I had frequently some returns of those vapours on different occasions, and sometimes without any occasion at all.

One night, after having seen some appearance in the air, as I had just laid down in my bed, one of my feet pained me ; after that came a numbness succeeded with a tingling in my blood ; when on a sudden I thought something alive lay upon me, from my knee to above half my leg. Hereupon immediately I flung myself out of bed in the dark, where I thought the creature lay : But finding nothing, *Lord deliver me from an evil spirit*, said I, *what can this be ?* And when I lighted a candle, I could perceive no living creature in the place with me, but the poor parrot, who being frightened, cried out, *Hold your tongue, and What's the matter with you ?* which words I had taught him, by saying so to him, when he made such screaming noises that I did not like. *Lord*, said I aloud, *surely the devil has been here.* *Hold your tongue*, says Poll. I then was mad at the bird, and putting on my clothes, cried, I am terribly frightened. *What's the matter with you ?* says Poll. You roared, said I, I'll knock your brains out. *Hold your tongue*, cried he again, and so fell a chattering, and calling *Robinson Crusoe*, as he did before. But after I had composed myself, and went to bed again, I began plainly to see it was a distemper that affected the nerves, and so my terrors vanished at once.

How intelligences are given or received, we do not know ; nor are we sensible of their being conveyed this way, from the spirits unembodied, to ours that are in life ; or of their being conveyed that way, namely from us to them : The latter certainly is done without the help of organs, and the former is conveyed by the understanding, and the retired faculties of the soul.

The spirits, without the help of voices, converse.

The

The more particular discoveries of the converse of spirits, seem to me as follow :

Dreams, voices, noises, impulses, hints, apprehensions, involuntary sadness, &c.

Dreams of old were the ways, by which God himself was pleased to warn men what services to perform, and what to shun. *Joseph* was directed of God in a dream to go to *Egypt*, and so were the wise men warned in a dream to depart into their own country another way, to avoid the fury of *Herod*. I am not like those who think dreams are the mere doings of a delirious head, or the reliets of a day's perplexities or pleasures ; but on the contrary, I must take leave to say, I never had any capital mischief beset me in my life, but I had some notice of it by a dream ; and had I not been a thoughtless unbelieving creature, I might have taken many a warning, and avoided many of the evils I afterwards fell into, merely by a total neglect of those dreams.

I remember, I was present at a dispute between a layman and a clergyman upon the subject of dreams : The first, thought no regard should be given unto them, that their communication from the invisible to the visible world was a mere chimera, without any solid foundation : For, 1. (said he) if dreams were from the agency of any prescient being, the motives would be more direct, and the discoveries more plain ; and not by allegories and emblematic fancies expressing things imperfect and obscure. 2. Since, with the notice of evil, there was not a power given to avoid it, it is not likely to proceed from a spirit, but merely fortuitous. 3. That the inconsistency of such notices, in cases equally important, prove, they did not proceed from any such agent. 4. That as our most distinct dreams had nothing in them of any significancy, it would be irrational and vain to think that they came from heaven. And, 5. That as men were not always thus warned or supplied with notice of good or evil, so all men are not alike supplied with them ; and what reason could we give, why one man or one woman should not have the same hints as another.

To all this the clergyman gave answer, 1. That as to the signification of dreams, and the objections against them, as being dark and doubtful, they are expressed generally by hieroglyphical representations, similes, allusions, and figurative emblematic ways, by which means, for want of interpretation, the thing was not understood, and consequently the evil not shunned. 2. That we charge God foolishly, to say he has given the notice of evil without the power to avoid it ; for if any one had not power to avoid the evil, it was no notice to him ; and it was want of giving due heed to that notice, that men first neglected themselves, and then charged the Judge of all the earth with injustice. 3. That we ought not to find fault with  
the

the inconstancy of these notices, but rather our crazy understandings, by pretending dreams were not to be regarded, and neglected when the voice really spoke to us for our good. It was a great mistake to say dreams had no import at all; it might rather be said, none that we could perceive the reason of, which was owing to our blindness and supine negligence to be secure at one time, and our heads too much alarmed at another; so that the spirit which we might be said to be conversing with in a dream, was constantly and equally kind and careful; but our powers not always in the same state of action, nor equally attentive to or retentive of the hints that were given. And, 5. To answer the last question, Why people are not equally supplied? This seemed to be no question; for Providence itself might have some share in the direction of it, and then that Providence might be limited by some superiour direction: That as to the converse of spirits, he could not tie up to a stated converse: Such a thing there was, but why there was so much of it, and no more, was none of his business, and that no such discovery had ever been made yet to mankind. Nor are we less to imagine of walking dreams, trances, visions, noises, hints, impulses, and all the waking testimonies of an invisible world, and of the communication that there is between us and them, which commonly entertain us with our eyes open.

One time my fancy soared on high, to see what discoveries I could make in those clearer regions. I found that such immense bodies as the sun, stars, planets and moons in the great circle of the lower heaven, is far from being found in the study of nature, on the surface of the earth: Here I saw many things that we can entertain little or no notion of in a state of common superficial life, and the emptiness of our notion that the planets were made habitable worlds; that is, I mean, for the subsistence and existence of man and beast, and the preservation of the vegetative and sensitive life: No no, this is, I assure you, a world of spirits: For here I saw a clear demonstration of Satan being the prince of the power of the air, keeping his court or camp, with innumerable angels to attend him: But his power is not so great as we imagine, he can tempt us to the crime, but cannot force us to commit it: *Humanum est peccare*. Neither has the devil power to force the world into a rebellion against heaven, though his legions are employed in the savage nations to set up their master for a god, and who made the heathens either worship him in person, or by his representatives, idols, and monsters, with the cruel sacrifices of human blood. Now as to the limitations of the devil's power, you must understand, that there are numbers of good angels sent from the higher and blest abodes, to disconcert and oppose their measures: And this, I hope, every Christian believes, when

when he prays to God, the Father of Spirits, to give his angels charge over him while he slumbereth and sleepeth. For if by these preventing powers the devil was not restrained, the earth would be subject to dearth, droughts and famine; the air infected with obnoxious fumes; and, in a word, mankind would be utterly destroyed, which might oblige our Maker to the necessity of a new *Fiat*, or else have no more creatures to honour and worship him.

As the devil never wanted insinulators, I shall observe, that I learned a way how to make a man dream of what I pleased. For instance, let us suppose one to be found asleep, let another lay his mouth close to his ear, and whisper any thing so softly as not to awake him, the sleeping man shall dream of what has been so whispered in his ear; nay, I can assure you, these insinuating devils can do this even when we are awake, which I call *impulses of the mind*: For from whence, but from these insinulators, come our causeless passions, involuntary wickedness, or sinful desires? Who else forms ideas in the mind of man when he is asleep, or presents terrible or beautiful figures to the fancy? Mr. *Milton* represents the devil tempting *Eve* in the shape of a toad lying just at her ear, when in her bower she lay fast asleep; and brings in *Eve* telling *Adam* what an uneasy night's rest she had, and relating her dream to him. And likewise I believe that good spirits have the same intercourse with us, in warning us against those things that are evil, and prompting us to those which are good.

Were we to have the eyes of our souls opened through the eyes of our bodies, we should see this very immediate region of air which we breathe in, thronged with spirits now invisible, and which otherwise would be the most terrible: We should view the secret transactions of those messengers who are employed when the parting soul takes its leave of the reluctant body, and perhaps see things, nature would start back from with the utmost terror and amazement. In a word, the curtain of Providence for the disposition of things here, and the curtain of judgment for the determination of the state of souls hereafter would be alike drawn back; and what heart could support here its future state in life, much less that of its future state after life, even good or bad.

A gentleman of my acquaintance, being about seven miles distant from *London*, a friend that came to dine with him, solicited him to go to the city. What for, said the gentleman, is there any occasion for me? No, Sir, said the other, nothing at all, except the enjoyment of your good company; and so gave over importuning him. Just then a strong impulse of mind urged the gentleman, and pursed him like a voice with, *go to London, go to London*. Hark ye, says he to his friend, is all well at *London*? Am I wanted there? Or did you ask me to go with you on any particular account? Are all my family  
well?

well? Yes, indeed, Sir, said he, I perceived them all very hearty; and I did not ask you to go to *London* upon any particular account whatsoever, except it was for the sake of your good company. Again, he puts off his resolution, but still the impulse suggested to him, *Go to London*; and at length he did so; and when he came there he found a letter and messenger had been there to seek him, and to tell him of a particular business, which was first and last above a thousand pounds to him, and which might have inevitably been lost, had he not returned to *London* that night.

The obeying of several hints, or secret impulses, argues great wisdom. I knew a man that was under misfortunes, being guilty of misdemeanors against the government; when absconding for fear of his ruin, all his friends advising him not to put himself in the hands of the law, one morning as he awaked, he felt a strong impulse darting into his mind thus, *Write a letter to them*: And this was repeated several times to his mind, and at last he answered to it as if it had been a voice, *Who shall I write to?* Immediately it returned, *Write to the judge*: And this impulse pursued him for several days, till at length he took pen, ink, and paper, and sat down to write to him; when immediately words flowed from his pen like streams from a fair fountain, that even charmed himself with expectation of success: In short, the letter was so strenuous in argument, so pathetic in its eloquence, and persuasively moving, that when the judge had read it, he sent him an answer he might be easy, for he would endeavour to make the matter light to him; and indeed never left exerting himself, till he had ropt the prosecution, and restored him to his liberty and family.

I knew a person, who had so strong an impression upon her mind, that the house she was in would be burnt that very night, that she could not go to sleep, the impulse she had upon her mind pressed her not to go to bed, which, however, she resisted and went to bed, but was terrified with the thought, which, as she called it, ran into her mind, that the house would be burnt, that she could not go to sleep. So much discovery had she made of her apprehensions in the family, that they were all in a fright, and applied themselves to search from the top of the house to the bottom, and to see every fire and every candle safe out, so that, as they all said, it was impossible any thing could happen in the house, and they sent to the neighbours on both sides to do the like. Thus far they did well, but had she obeyed the hint, which pressed upon her, strangely, not to go to bed, she had done much better, for the fire was actually kindled at that time, though not broken out. About an hour after the whole family was in bed, the house just over the way, directly opposite, was all in a flame, and

the wind, which was very high, blowing the flame upon the house this gentlewoman lived in, so filled it with smoke and fire, in a few moments, the street being narrow, that they had not air to breathe, or time to do any thing, but jump out of their beds, and save their lives; had she obeyed the hint given, and not gone to bed, she might have saved several things: but the few moments she had spared to her, were but just sufficient to leap out of bed, put some clothes on, and get down stairs, for the house was on fire in half a quarter of an hour.

While I am mentioning these things, methinks it is very hard, that we should obey the whispers of evil spirits, and not much rather receive the notices which good ones are pleased to give. We never perceive the misfortune of this, but when in real danger; and then we cry, *my mind misgave me*, when I was going about it: But if so, why did you slight the caution? Why not listen to it, *as to a voice*? And then there had been no reason to make this complaint.

I remember about fourteen or fifteen years ago (as to time I cannot be very positive) there was a young clergyman in the city of *Dublin*, in *Ireland*, who had a very uncommon dream. That a gentleman had killed his wife (who was a relation of his) by stabbing her in several places. The fright of this soon awaked him; he then fell asleep a second time, dreamt the same dream; and, in short, a third time also. So troubled was he in his mind, that he arose, and knocking at his mother's chamber, told his concern, and of his apprehensions that all was not right at his relation's house. Dear son, says the good old gentlewoman, mind not these foolish dreams: And I very much wonder that you, being a person in holy orders, should have regard to such illusions. He went to bed again, slept and dreamt as before. And then indeed he put on his night-gown, and went to *Smithfield*, the place where his relation dwelt. Here it was, alas! he perceived his dream too sadly fulfilled, by seeing his relation, the young lady, big with child, who was a Protestant, stabbed in seven places, by her barbarous husband, Mr. *Eustace*, a rigid Papist, only upon some discourses of religion that happened the day before: After the wretch had stabbed her in three places he endeavoured to escape out of a window, but she cried, *My dear, don't leave me, come back; and I shall be well again*. At which he returned in a hellish rage, and gave her four wounds more; when even in this condition, rising from her bed, she wrapt herself in her night-gown, and went to the Lord Bishop of *Rapho's* chamber door (the Bishop lodging at that time in the house) *my Lord*, said she, *O, my Lord, make haste unto me*; but as soon as his Lordship came, she expired in his arms, resigning her precious soul into the hands of Almighty God. The cruel wretch her husband was shot by the pursuers, too good a death for one  
who

who deserved the gibbet : The lady was universally lamented by all tender and religious people. And this tragical relation I have mentioned upon the account of that impulse, or dream, that the clergyman had at the fatal time of the bloody act.

It might be expected I should enter upon the subject of apparitions, and discourse concerning the reality of them ; and whether they can revisit the place of their former existence, and resume those faculties of speech and shape which they had when living ; but as these are very doubtful matters, I shall only make a few observations upon them.

I once heard of a man who would allow the reality of apparitions, but laid it all on the devil, and thinking the souls of men departed did never appear ; yet to this very man something did appear, and then he said he saw the shape of an ancient man pass by him in the dusk, who holding up his hand in a threatening posture, cried out, *O wicked man repent, repent.* Terrified with this apparition, he consulted several friends, who advised him to take the advice. But, after all, it was not an apparition, but a grave and pious gentleman, who met him by mere accident, and had been made sensible of his wickedness ; and who never undeceived him, lest it should hinder his reformation : Were we always willing to make good use of Satan's real appearances, I know not but it would go a great way to banish him from the visible world ; for I am very positive he would seldom visit, if he thought his coming would do us any good : But so absolutely is he at the command of heaven, that he must go, even to do the work he abhors.

Some people make a very ill use of the general notion, that there are no apparitions, nor spirits at all ; which is worse than those who fancy they see them upon every occasion : For those carry their notions farther ; even to annihilate the devil, and believe nothing about him, neither of one kind or other. The next step they come to is to conclude *There is no God* ; and so atheism takes its rise in the same sink, with a carelessness about futurity : But there is no occasion to enter upon argument, to prove the being of the Almighty, or to illustrate his power by words, who has so many undeniable testimonies in the breast of every rational being to prove his existence : And we have proofs sufficient enough to convince us of the great superintendency of Divine Providence in the minutest affairs of the world, the manifest existence of the invisible world, the reality of spirits, and intelligence between us and them. What I have said, I hope will not mislead any person, or be a means whereby they may delude themselves : For I have spoken of these things with the utmost seriousness of mind, and with a sincere and ardent desire for the general good and benefit of the world.

Samuel Sanford

Book



~~Samuel Sanford~~

~~Samuel~~

~~Samuel~~

11

Samuel Sanford

Book

Handwritten flourish or signature

professor Stanford

James



Samuel Sanford

Book 1527

1870

